

# Part II

## Foundations

# Vocabularies

$a \cdot b$  “ $a$  times  $b$ ”

“ $a$  multiplied by  $b$ ”

“ $a$  into  $b$ ”

$\frac{a}{b}$  “ $a$  divided by  $b$ ”

“ $a$  by  $b$ ”

“ $a$  over  $b$ ”

( $a$ : numerator (Zähler),  $b$ : denominator (Nenner))

$a^b$  “ $a$  raised to the  $b$ -th power”

“ $a$  to the  $b$ -th”

“ $a$  raised to the power of  $b$ ”

“ $a$  to the power of  $b$ ”

“ $a$  raised to  $b$ ”

“ $a$  to the  $b$ ”

“ $a$  raised by the exponent of  $b$ ”

# Vocabularies

$a \cdot b$  “ $a$  times  $b$ ”

“ $a$  multiplied by  $b$ ”

“ $a$  into  $b$ ”

$\frac{a}{b}$  “ $a$  divided by  $b$ ”

“ $a$  by  $b$ ”

“ $a$  over  $b$ ”

( $a$ : numerator (Zähler),  $b$ : denominator (Nenner))

$a^b$  “ $a$  raised to the  $b$ -th power”

“ $a$  to the  $b$ -th”

“ $a$  raised to the power of  $b$ ”

“ $a$  to the power of  $b$ ”

“ $a$  raised to  $b$ ”

“ $a$  divided  $b$ ”

“ $a$  raised by the exponent of  $b$ ”

# Vocabularies

$a \cdot b$  “ $a$  times  $b$ ”

“ $a$  multiplied by  $b$ ”

“ $a$  into  $b$ ”

$\frac{a}{b}$  “ $a$  divided by  $b$ ”

“ $a$  by  $b$ ”

“ $a$  over  $b$ ”

( $a$ : numerator (Zähler),  $b$ : denominator (Nenner))

$a^b$  “ $a$  raised to the  $b$ -th power”

“ $a$  to the  $b$ th”

“ $a$  raised to the power of  $b$ ”

“ $a$  to the power of  $b$ ”

“ $a$  raised to  $b$ ”

“ $a$  divided  $b$ ”

“ $a$  raised by the exponent of  $b$ ”

# Vocabularies

$a \cdot b$  “ $a$  times  $b$ ”

“ $a$  multiplied by  $b$ ”

“ $a$  into  $b$ ”

$\frac{a}{b}$  “ $a$  divided by  $b$ ”

“ $a$  by  $b$ ”

“ $a$  over  $b$ ”

( $a$ : numerator (Zähler),  $b$ : denominator (Nenner))

$a^b$  “ $a$  raised to the  $b$ -th power”

“ $a$  to the  $b$ th”

“ $a$  raised to the power of  $b$ ”

“ $a$  to the power of  $b$ ”

“ $a$  raised to  $b$ ”

“ $a$  to the  $b$ ”

“ $a$  raised by the exponent of  $b$ ”

# Vocabularies

$a \cdot b$  “ $a$  times  $b$ ”

“ $a$  multiplied by  $b$ ”

“ $a$  into  $b$ ”

$\frac{a}{b}$  “ $a$  divided by  $b$ ”

“ $a$  by  $b$ ”

“ $a$  over  $b$ ”

( $a$ : numerator (Zähler),  $b$ : denominator (Nenner))

$a^b$  “ $a$  raised to the  $b$ -th power”

“ $a$  to the  $b$ th”

“ $a$  raised to the power of  $b$ ”

“ $a$  to the power of  $b$ ”

“ $a$  raised to  $b$ ”

“ $a$  to the  $b$ ”

“ $a$  raised to the exponent of  $b$ ”

# Vocabularies

$a \cdot b$  “ $a$  times  $b$ ”

“ $a$  multiplied by  $b$ ”

“ $a$  into  $b$ ”

$\frac{a}{b}$  “ $a$  divided by  $b$ ”

“ $a$  by  $b$ ”

“ $a$  over  $b$ ”

( $a$ : numerator (Zähler),  $b$ : denominator (Nenner))

$a^b$  “ $a$  raised to the  $b$ -th power”

“ $a$  to the power of  $b$ ”

“ $a$  raised to the power of  $b$ ”

“ $a$  to the power of  $b$ ”

“ $a$  to the  $b$ th power”

“ $a$  to the  $b$ th power”

“ $a$  to the power of  $b$ ”

# Vocabularies

$a \cdot b$  “ $a$  times  $b$ ”

“ $a$  multiplied by  $b$ ”

“ $a$  into  $b$ ”

$\frac{a}{b}$  “ $a$  divided by  $b$ ”

“ $a$  by  $b$ ”

“ $a$  over  $b$ ”

( $a$ : numerator (**Zähler**),  $b$ : denominator (**Nenner**))

$a^b$  “ $a$  raised to the  $b$ -th power”



# Vocabularies

$a \cdot b$  “ $a$  times  $b$ ”

“ $a$  multiplied by  $b$ ”

“ $a$  into  $b$ ”

$\frac{a}{b}$  “ $a$  divided by  $b$ ”

“ $a$  by  $b$ ”

“ $a$  over  $b$ ”

( $a$ : numerator (**Zähler**),  $b$ : denominator (**Nenner**))

$a^b$  “ $a$  raised to the  $b$ -th power”

“ $a$  to the  $b$ -th”

“ $a$  raised to the power of  $b$ ”

“ $a$  to the power of  $b$ ”

“ $a$  raised to  $b$ ”

“ $a$  to the  $b$ ”

“ $a$  raised by the exponent of  $b$ ”

# Vocabularies

$a \cdot b$  “ $a$  times  $b$ ”

“ $a$  multiplied by  $b$ ”

“ $a$  into  $b$ ”

$\frac{a}{b}$  “ $a$  divided by  $b$ ”

“ $a$  by  $b$ ”

“ $a$  over  $b$ ”

( $a$ : numerator (**Zähler**),  $b$ : denominator (**Nenner**))

$a^b$  “ $a$  raised to the  $b$ -th power”

“ $a$  to the  $b$ -th”

“ $a$  raised to the power of  $b$ ”

“ $a$  to the power of  $b$ ”

“ $a$  raised to  $b$ ”

“ $a$  to the  $b$ ”

“ $a$  raised by the exponent of  $b$ ”

# Vocabularies

$a \cdot b$  “ $a$  times  $b$ ”

“ $a$  multiplied by  $b$ ”

“ $a$  into  $b$ ”

$\frac{a}{b}$  “ $a$  divided by  $b$ ”

“ $a$  by  $b$ ”

“ $a$  over  $b$ ”

( $a$ : numerator (**Zähler**),  $b$ : denominator (**Nenner**))

$a^b$  “ $a$  raised to the  $b$ -th power”

“ $a$  to the  $b$ -th”

“ $a$  raised to the power of  $b$ ”

“ $a$  to the power of  $b$ ”

“ $a$  raised to  $b$ ”

“ $a$  to the  $b$ ”

“ $a$  raised by the exponent of  $b$ ”

# Vocabularies

$a \cdot b$  “ $a$  times  $b$ ”

“ $a$  multiplied by  $b$ ”

“ $a$  into  $b$ ”

$\frac{a}{b}$  “ $a$  divided by  $b$ ”

“ $a$  by  $b$ ”

“ $a$  over  $b$ ”

( $a$ : numerator (Zähler),  $b$ : denominator (Nenner))

$a^b$  “ $a$  raised to the  $b$ -th power”

“ $a$  to the  $b$ -th”

“ $a$  raised to the power of  $b$ ”

“ $a$  to the power of  $b$ ”

“ $a$  raised to  $b$ ”

“ $a$  to the  $b$ ”

“ $a$  raised by the exponent of  $b$ ”

# Vocabularies

$a \cdot b$  “ $a$  times  $b$ ”  
“ $a$  multiplied by  $b$ ”  
“ $a$  into  $b$ ”

$\frac{a}{b}$  “ $a$  divided by  $b$ ”  
“ $a$  by  $b$ ”  
“ $a$  over  $b$ ”

( $a$ : numerator (**Zähler**),  $b$ : denominator (**Nenner**))

$a^b$  “ $a$  raised to the  $b$ -th power”  
“ $a$  to the  $b$ -th”  
“ $a$  raised to the power of  $b$ ”  
“ $a$  to the power of  $b$ ”  
“ $a$  raised to  $b$ ”  
“ $a$  to the  $b$ ”  
“ $a$  raised by the exponent of  $b$ ”

# Vocabularies

$a \cdot b$  “ $a$  times  $b$ ”

“ $a$  multiplied by  $b$ ”

“ $a$  into  $b$ ”

$\frac{a}{b}$  “ $a$  divided by  $b$ ”

“ $a$  by  $b$ ”

“ $a$  over  $b$ ”

( $a$ : numerator (**Zähler**),  $b$ : denominator (**Nenner**))

$a^b$  “ $a$  raised to the  $b$ -th power”

“ $a$  to the  $b$ -th”

“ $a$  raised to the power of  $b$ ”

“ $a$  to the power of  $b$ ”

“ $a$  raised to  $b$ ”

“ $a$  to the  $b$ ”

“ $a$  raised by the exponent of  $b$ ”

# Vocabularies

$a \cdot b$  “ $a$  times  $b$ ”

“ $a$  multiplied by  $b$ ”

“ $a$  into  $b$ ”

$\frac{a}{b}$  “ $a$  divided by  $b$ ”

“ $a$  by  $b$ ”

“ $a$  over  $b$ ”

( $a$ : numerator (**Zähler**),  $b$ : denominator (**Nenner**))

$a^b$  “ $a$  raised to the  $b$ -th power”

“ $a$  to the  $b$ -th”

“ $a$  raised to the power of  $b$ ”

“ $a$  to the power of  $b$ ”

“ $a$  raised to  $b$ ”

“ $a$  to the  $b$ ”

“ $a$  raised by the exponent of  $b$ ”

# Vocabularies

$n!$  “ $n$  factorial”

$\binom{n}{k}$  “ $n$  choose  $k$ ”

$x_i$  “ $x$  subscript  $i$ ”

“ $x$  sub  $i$ ”

“ $x$   $i$ ”

$\log_b a$  “log to the base  $b$  of  $a$ ”

“log  $a$  to the base  $b$ ”

$$f : X \rightarrow Y, x \mapsto x^2$$

$f$  is a function that maps from **domain** (Definitionsbereich)  $X$  to **codomain** (Zielmenge)  $Y$ . The set  $\{y \in Y \mid \exists x \in X : f(x) = y\}$  is the **image** or the **range** of the function (Bildbereich/Wertebereich).



# Vocabularies

$n!$  “ $n$  factorial”

$\binom{n}{k}$  “ $n$  choose  $k$ ”

$x_i$  “ $x$  subscript  $i$ ”

“ $x$  sub  $i$ ”

“ $x$   $i$ ”

$\log_b a$  “log to the base  $b$  of  $a$ ”

“log  $a$  to the base  $b$ ”

$$f : X \rightarrow Y, x \mapsto x^2$$

$f$  is a function that maps from **domain** (Definitionsbereich)  $X$  to **codomain** (Zielmenge)  $Y$ . The set  $\{y \in Y \mid \exists x \in X : f(x) = y\}$  is the **image** or the **range** of the function (Bildbereich/Wertebereich).

# Vocabularies

$n!$  “ $n$  factorial”

$\binom{n}{k}$  “ $n$  choose  $k$ ”

$x_i$  “ $x$  subscript  $i$ ”

“ $x$  sub  $i$ ”

“ $x$   $i$ ”

$\log_b a$  “log to the base  $b$  of  $a$ ”

“log  $a$  to the base  $b$ ”

$$f : X \rightarrow Y, x \mapsto x^2$$

$f$  is a function that maps from **domain** (Definitionsbereich)  $X$  to **codomain** (Zielmenge)  $Y$ . The set  $\{y \in Y \mid \exists x \in X : f(x) = y\}$  is the **image** or the **range** of the function (Bildbereich/Wertebereich).

# Vocabularies

$n!$  “ $n$  factorial”

$\binom{n}{k}$  “ $n$  choose  $k$ ”

$x_i$  “ $x$  subscript  $i$ ”

“ $x$  sub  $i$ ”

“ $x$   $i$ ”

$\log_b a$  “log to the base  $b$  of  $a$ ”

“log  $a$  to the base  $b$ ”

$$f : X \rightarrow Y, x \mapsto x^2$$

$f$  is a function that maps from **domain** (Definitionsbereich)  $X$  to **codomain** (Zielmenge)  $Y$ . The set  $\{y \in Y \mid \exists x \in X : f(x) = y\}$  is the **image** or the **range** of the function (Bildbereich/Wertebereich).

# Vocabularies

$n!$  “ $n$  factorial”

$\binom{n}{k}$  “ $n$  choose  $k$ ”

$x_i$  “ $x$  subscript  $i$ ”

“ $x$  sub  $i$ ”

“ $x$   $i$ ”

$\log_b a$  “log to the base  $b$  of  $a$ ”

“log  $a$  to the base  $b$ ”

$$f : X \rightarrow Y, x \mapsto x^2$$

$f$  is a function that maps from **domain** (Definitionsbereich)  $X$  to **codomain** (Zielmenge)  $Y$ . The set  $\{y \in Y \mid \exists x \in X : f(x) = y\}$  is the **image** or the **range** of the function (Bildbereich/Wertebereich).

# Vocabularies

$n!$  “ $n$  factorial”

$\binom{n}{k}$  “ $n$  choose  $k$ ”

$x_i$  “ $x$  subscript  $i$ ”

“ $x$  sub  $i$ ”

“ $x$   $i$ ”

$\log_b a$  “log to the base  $b$  of  $a$ ”

“log  $a$  to the base  $b$ ”

$$f : X \rightarrow Y, x \mapsto x^2$$

$f$  is a function that maps from **domain** (Definitionsbereich)  $X$  to **codomain** (Zielmenge)  $Y$ . The set  $\{y \in Y \mid \exists x \in X : f(x) = y\}$  is the **image** or the **range** of the function (**Bildbereich/Wertebereich**).

## 3 Goals

- ▶ Gain knowledge about efficient algorithms for important problems, i.e., learn how to solve certain types of problems efficiently.
- ▶ Learn how to analyze and judge the efficiency of algorithms.
- ▶ Learn how to design efficient algorithms.

## 3 Goals

- ▶ Gain knowledge about efficient algorithms for important problems, i.e., learn how to solve certain types of problems efficiently.
- ▶ Learn how to analyze and judge the efficiency of algorithms.
- ▶ Learn how to design efficient algorithms.

## 3 Goals

- ▶ Gain knowledge about efficient algorithms for important problems, i.e., learn how to solve certain types of problems efficiently.
- ▶ Learn how to analyze and judge the efficiency of algorithms.
- ▶ Learn how to design efficient algorithms.



# 4 Modelling Issues

## What do you measure?

- ▶ **Memory requirement**
- ▶ Running time
- ▶ Number of comparisons
- ▶ Number of multiplications
- ▶ Number of hard-disc accesses
- ▶ Program size
- ▶ Power consumption
- ▶ ...

# 4 Modelling Issues

## What do you measure?

- ▶ Memory requirement
- ▶ Running time
- ▶ Number of comparisons
- ▶ Number of multiplications
- ▶ Number of hard-disc accesses
- ▶ Program size
- ▶ Power consumption
- ▶ ...

# 4 Modelling Issues

## What do you measure?

- ▶ Memory requirement
- ▶ Running time
- ▶ Number of comparisons
- ▶ Number of multiplications
- ▶ Number of hard-disc accesses
- ▶ Program size
- ▶ Power consumption
- ▶ ...

# 4 Modelling Issues

## What do you measure?

- ▶ Memory requirement
- ▶ Running time
- ▶ Number of comparisons
- ▶ Number of multiplications
- ▶ Number of hard-disc accesses
- ▶ Program size
- ▶ Power consumption
- ▶ ...

# 4 Modelling Issues

## What do you measure?

- ▶ Memory requirement
- ▶ Running time
- ▶ Number of comparisons
- ▶ Number of multiplications
- ▶ Number of hard-disc accesses
- ▶ Program size
- ▶ Power consumption
- ▶ ...

# 4 Modelling Issues

## What do you measure?

- ▶ Memory requirement
- ▶ Running time
- ▶ Number of comparisons
- ▶ Number of multiplications
- ▶ Number of hard-disc accesses
- ▶ Program size
- ▶ Power consumption
- ▶ ...

# 4 Modelling Issues

## What do you measure?

- ▶ Memory requirement
- ▶ Running time
- ▶ Number of comparisons
- ▶ Number of multiplications
- ▶ Number of hard-disc accesses
- ▶ Program size
- ▶ Power consumption
- ▶ ...

# 4 Modelling Issues

## What do you measure?

- ▶ Memory requirement
- ▶ Running time
- ▶ Number of comparisons
- ▶ Number of multiplications
- ▶ Number of hard-disc accesses
- ▶ Program size
- ▶ Power consumption
- ▶ ...



# 4 Modelling Issues

## How do you measure?

- ▶ Implementing and testing on representative inputs
  - ▶ How do you choose your inputs?
  - ▶ May be very time-consuming.
  - ▶ Very reliable results if done correctly.
  - ▶ Results only hold for a specific machine and for a specific set of inputs.
- ▶ Theoretical analysis in a specific **model of computation**.
  - ▶ Gives a **lower bound** like "this algorithm always runs in  $O(n \log n)$  time".
  - ▶ Typically focuses on the **number of comparisons**.
  - ▶ Can this lower bound also apply to comparison-based sorting algorithms? needs at least  $\Omega(n \log n)$  comparisons in the worst case.

# 4 Modelling Issues

## How do you measure?

- ▶ Implementing and testing on representative inputs
  - ▶ How do you choose your inputs?
    - ▶ May be very time-consuming.
    - ▶ Very reliable results if done correctly.
    - ▶ Results only hold for a specific machine and for a specific set of inputs.

- ▶ Theoretical analysis in a specific **model of computation**.

Quick question: Is the following algorithm always runs in  $O(n \log n)$  time?

Quick Answer:

Typically, no. Why not?

Can this lower bound be any comparison-based sorting algorithm needs at least  $\Omega(n \log n)$  comparisons in the worst case?

# 4 Modelling Issues

## How do you measure?

- ▶ Implementing and testing on representative inputs
  - ▶ How do you choose your inputs?
  - ▶ May be very time-consuming.
  - ▶ Very reliable results if done correctly.
  - ▶ Results only hold for a specific machine and for a specific set of inputs.

- ▶ Theoretical analysis in a specific **model of computation**.

Quick question: How many steps does this algorithm always take?

One billion.

Typically,  $n^2$  comparisons.

Can this lower bound be achieved by comparison-based sorting algorithms?

Algorithm needs at least  $\Omega(n \log n)$  comparisons in the worst case.

# 4 Modelling Issues

## How do you measure?

- ▶ Implementing and testing on representative inputs
  - ▶ How do you choose your inputs?
  - ▶ May be very time-consuming.
  - ▶ Very reliable results if done correctly.
  - ▶ Results only hold for a specific machine and for a specific set of inputs.
- ▶ Theoretical analysis in a specific model of computation.

Quick question: How many algorithms always runs in  $O(n^2)$  time?  
A: None.  
Why not?  
Can the lower bound of the best comparison-based sorting algorithm be  $\Omega(n \log n)$  comparisons in the worst case?

## 4 Modelling Issues

### How do you measure?

- ▶ Implementing and testing on representative inputs
  - ▶ How do you choose your inputs?
  - ▶ May be very time-consuming.
  - ▶ Very reliable results if done correctly.
  - ▶ Results only hold for a specific machine and for a specific set of inputs.
- ▶ Theoretical analysis in a specific model of computation.

# 4 Modelling Issues

## How do you measure?

- ▶ Implementing and testing on representative inputs
  - ▶ How do you choose your inputs?
  - ▶ May be very time-consuming.
  - ▶ Very reliable results if done correctly.
  - ▶ Results only hold for a specific machine and for a specific set of inputs.
  
- ▶ Theoretical analysis in a specific **model of computation**.
  - ▶ Gives **asymptotic bounds** like “this algorithm always runs in time  $\mathcal{O}(n^2)$ ”.
  - ▶ Typically focuses on the **worst case**.
  - ▶ Can give lower bounds like “any comparison-based sorting algorithm needs at least  $\Omega(n \log n)$  comparisons in the worst case”.

## 4 Modelling Issues

### How do you measure?

- ▶ Implementing and testing on representative inputs
  - ▶ How do you choose your inputs?
  - ▶ May be very time-consuming.
  - ▶ Very reliable results if done correctly.
  - ▶ Results only hold for a specific machine and for a specific set of inputs.
- ▶ Theoretical analysis in a specific **model of computation**.
  - ▶ Gives **asymptotic bounds** like “this algorithm always runs in time  $\mathcal{O}(n^2)$ ”.
  - ▶ Typically focuses on the **worst case**.
  - ▶ Can give lower bounds like “any comparison-based sorting algorithm needs at least  $\Omega(n \log n)$  comparisons in the worst case”.

# 4 Modelling Issues

## How do you measure?

- ▶ Implementing and testing on representative inputs
  - ▶ How do you choose your inputs?
  - ▶ May be very time-consuming.
  - ▶ Very reliable results if done correctly.
  - ▶ Results only hold for a specific machine and for a specific set of inputs.
- ▶ Theoretical analysis in a specific **model of computation**.
  - ▶ Gives **asymptotic bounds** like “this algorithm always runs in time  $\mathcal{O}(n^2)$ ”.
  - ▶ Typically focuses on the **worst case**.
    - ▶ Can give lower bounds like “any comparison-based sorting algorithm needs at least  $\Omega(n \log n)$  comparisons in the worst case”.



## 4 Modelling Issues

### How do you measure?

- ▶ Implementing and testing on representative inputs
  - ▶ How do you choose your inputs?
  - ▶ May be very time-consuming.
  - ▶ Very reliable results if done correctly.
  - ▶ Results only hold for a specific machine and for a specific set of inputs.
  
- ▶ Theoretical analysis in a specific **model of computation**.
  - ▶ Gives **asymptotic bounds** like “this algorithm always runs in time  $\mathcal{O}(n^2)$ ”.
  - ▶ Typically focuses on the **worst case**.
  - ▶ Can give lower bounds like “any comparison-based sorting algorithm needs at least  $\Omega(n \log n)$  comparisons in the worst case”.

## 4 Modelling Issues

### Input length

The theoretical bounds are usually given by a function  $f : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  that maps the **input length** to the running time (or storage space, comparisons, multiplications, program size etc.).

The **input length** may e.g. be

the size of the input (number of bits)

the number of arguments

the number of elements in the input (e.g. the number of nodes in a graph)

the number of edges in the input (e.g. the number of edges in a graph)

the number of operations

## 4 Modelling Issues

### Input length

The theoretical bounds are usually given by a function  $f : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  that maps the **input length** to the running time (or storage space, comparisons, multiplications, program size etc.).

The **input length** may e.g. be

## 4 Modelling Issues

### Input length

The theoretical bounds are usually given by a function  $f : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  that maps the **input length** to the running time (or storage space, comparisons, multiplications, program size etc.).

The **input length** may e.g. be

- ▶ the size of the input (number of bits)
- ▶ the number of arguments

### Example 1

Suppose  $n$  numbers from the interval  $\{1, \dots, N\}$  have to be sorted. In this case we usually say that the input length is  $n$  instead of e.g.  $n \log N$ , which would be the number of bits required to encode the input.

## 4 Modelling Issues

### Input length

The theoretical bounds are usually given by a function  $f : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  that maps the **input length** to the running time (or storage space, comparisons, multiplications, program size etc.).

The **input length** may e.g. be

- ▶ the size of the input (number of bits)
- ▶ the number of arguments

### Example 1

Suppose  $n$  numbers from the interval  $\{1, \dots, N\}$  have to be sorted. In this case we usually say that the input length is  $n$  instead of e.g.  $n \log N$ , which would be the number of bits required to encode the input.

## 4 Modelling Issues

### Input length

The theoretical bounds are usually given by a function  $f : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  that maps the **input length** to the running time (or storage space, comparisons, multiplications, program size etc.).

The **input length** may e.g. be

- ▶ the size of the input (number of bits)
- ▶ the number of arguments

### Example 1

Suppose  $n$  numbers from the interval  $\{1, \dots, N\}$  have to be sorted. In this case we usually say that the input length is  $n$  instead of e.g.  $n \log N$ , which would be the number of bits required to encode the input.

## How to measure performance

- How to measure performance
- How to compare different models
- How to compare different algorithms
- How to compare different hardware
- How to compare different software
- How to compare different languages
- How to compare different compilers
- How to compare different interpreters
- How to compare different virtual machines
- How to compare different operating systems
- How to compare different hardware architectures
- How to compare different hardware components
- How to compare different hardware configurations
- How to compare different hardware environments
- How to compare different hardware conditions
- How to compare different hardware settings
- How to compare different hardware parameters
- How to compare different hardware variables
- How to compare different hardware constants
- How to compare different hardware types
- How to compare different hardware classes
- How to compare different hardware interfaces
- How to compare different hardware protocols
- How to compare different hardware standards
- How to compare different hardware specifications
- How to compare different hardware requirements
- How to compare different hardware constraints
- How to compare different hardware limitations
- How to compare different hardware capabilities
- How to compare different hardware features
- How to compare different hardware functions
- How to compare different hardware operations
- How to compare different hardware processes
- How to compare different hardware tasks
- How to compare different hardware jobs
- How to compare different hardware programs
- How to compare different hardware applications
- How to compare different hardware systems
- How to compare different hardware networks
- How to compare different hardware databases
- How to compare different hardware servers
- How to compare different hardware clients
- How to compare different hardware devices
- How to compare different hardware components
- How to compare different hardware modules
- How to compare different hardware units
- How to compare different hardware parts
- How to compare different hardware pieces
- How to compare different hardware items
- How to compare different hardware objects
- How to compare different hardware entities
- How to compare different hardware instances
- How to compare different hardware examples
- How to compare different hardware cases
- How to compare different hardware scenarios
- How to compare different hardware situations
- How to compare different hardware contexts
- How to compare different hardware environments
- How to compare different hardware conditions
- How to compare different hardware settings
- How to compare different hardware parameters
- How to compare different hardware variables
- How to compare different hardware constants
- How to compare different hardware types
- How to compare different hardware classes
- How to compare different hardware interfaces
- How to compare different hardware protocols
- How to compare different hardware standards
- How to compare different hardware specifications
- How to compare different hardware requirements
- How to compare different hardware constraints
- How to compare different hardware limitations
- How to compare different hardware capabilities
- How to compare different hardware features
- How to compare different hardware functions
- How to compare different hardware operations
- How to compare different hardware processes
- How to compare different hardware tasks
- How to compare different hardware jobs
- How to compare different hardware programs
- How to compare different hardware applications
- How to compare different hardware systems
- How to compare different hardware networks
- How to compare different hardware databases
- How to compare different hardware servers
- How to compare different hardware clients
- How to compare different hardware devices
- How to compare different hardware components
- How to compare different hardware modules
- How to compare different hardware units
- How to compare different hardware parts
- How to compare different hardware pieces
- How to compare different hardware items
- How to compare different hardware objects
- How to compare different hardware entities
- How to compare different hardware instances
- How to compare different hardware examples
- How to compare different hardware cases
- How to compare different hardware scenarios
- How to compare different hardware situations
- How to compare different hardware contexts

## How to measure performance

1. Calculate running time and storage space etc. on a simplified, idealized model of computation, e.g. Random Access Machine (RAM), Turing Machine (TM), . . .
2. Calculate number of certain basic operations: comparisons, multiplications, harddisc accesses, . . .

Version 2. is often easier, but focusing on one type of operation makes it more difficult to obtain meaningful results.



## How to measure performance

1. Calculate running time and storage space etc. on a simplified, idealized model of computation, e.g. Random Access Machine (RAM), Turing Machine (TM), ...
2. Calculate number of certain basic operations: comparisons, multiplications, harddisc accesses, ...

Version 2. is often easier, but focusing on one type of operation makes it more difficult to obtain meaningful results.

## How to measure performance

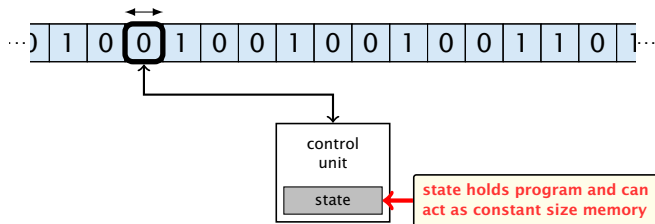
1. Calculate running time and storage space etc. on a simplified, idealized model of computation, e.g. Random Access Machine (RAM), Turing Machine (TM), ...
2. Calculate number of certain basic operations: comparisons, multiplications, harddisc accesses, ...

Version 2. is often easier, but focusing on one type of operation makes it more difficult to obtain meaningful results.

# Turing Machine

- ▶ Very simple model of computation.
- ▶ Only the “current” memory location can be altered.
- ▶ Very good model for discussing computability, or polynomial vs. exponential time.
- ▶ Some simple problems like recognizing whether input is of the form  $x^x$ , where  $x$  is a string, have quadratic lower bound.

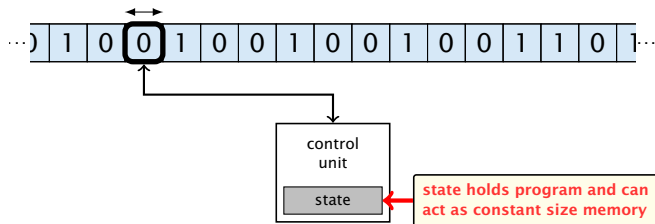
⇒ Not a good model for developing efficient algorithms.



# Turing Machine

- ▶ Very simple model of computation.
- ▶ Only the “current” memory location can be altered.
- ▶ Very good model for discussing computability, or polynomial vs. exponential time.
- ▶ Some simple problems like recognizing whether input is of the form  $x^x$ , where  $x$  is a string, have quadratic lower bound.

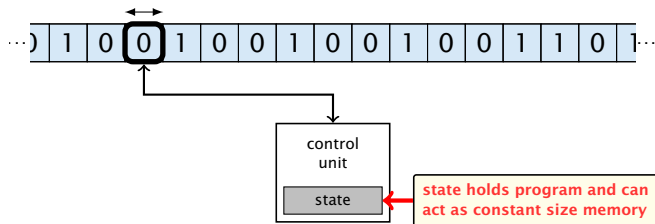
⇒ Not a good model for developing efficient algorithms.



# Turing Machine

- ▶ Very simple model of computation.
- ▶ Only the “current” memory location can be altered.
- ▶ Very good model for discussing computability, or polynomial vs. exponential time.
- ▶ Some simple problems like recognizing whether input is of the form  $x^x$ , where  $x$  is a string, have quadratic lower bound.

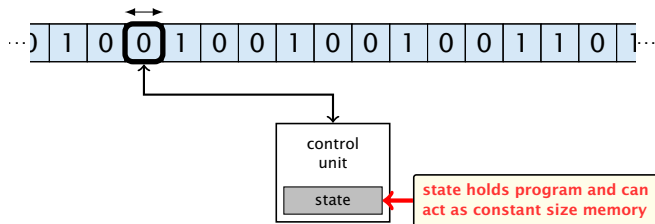
⇒ Not a good model for developing efficient algorithms.



# Turing Machine

- ▶ Very simple model of computation.
- ▶ Only the “current” memory location can be altered.
- ▶ Very good model for discussing computability, or polynomial vs. exponential time.
- ▶ Some simple problems like recognizing whether input is of the form  $xx$ , where  $x$  is a string, have quadratic lower bound.

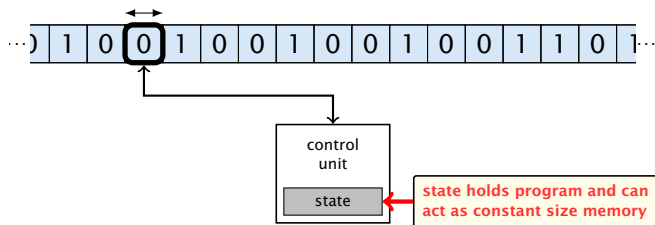
⇒ Not a good model for developing efficient algorithms.



# Turing Machine

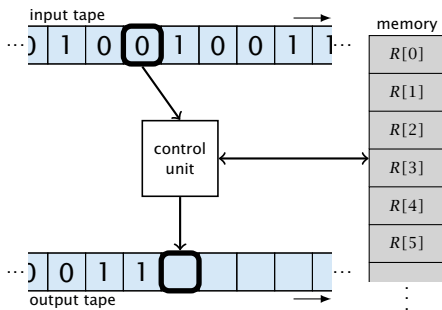
- ▶ Very simple model of computation.
- ▶ Only the “current” memory location can be altered.
- ▶ Very good model for discussing computability, or polynomial vs. exponential time.
- ▶ Some simple problems like recognizing whether input is of the form  $xx$ , where  $x$  is a string, have quadratic lower bound.

⇒ **Not a good model for developing efficient algorithms.**



# Random Access Machine (RAM)

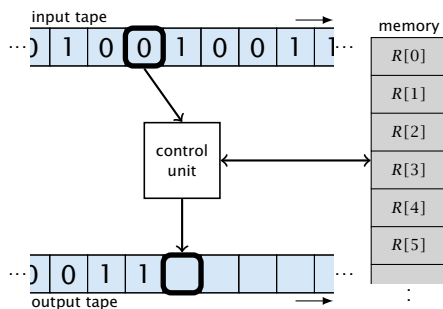
- ▶ Input tape and output tape (sequences of zeros and ones; unbounded length).
- ▶ Memory unit: infinite but countable number of registers  $R[0], R[1], R[2], \dots$
- ▶ Registers hold integers.
- ▶ Indirect addressing.





# Random Access Machine (RAM)

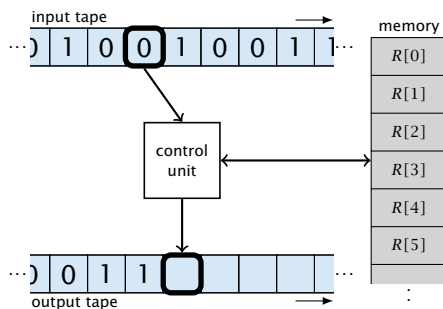
- ▶ Input tape and output tape (sequences of zeros and ones; unbounded length).
- ▶ Memory unit: infinite but countable number of registers  $R[0], R[1], R[2], \dots$
- ▶ Registers hold integers.
- ▶ Indirect addressing.



# Random Access Machine (RAM)

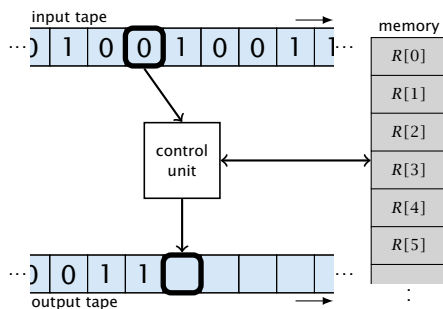
- ▶ Input tape and output tape (sequences of zeros and ones; unbounded length).
- ▶ Memory unit: infinite but countable number of registers  $R[0], R[1], R[2], \dots$
- ▶ Registers hold integers.

▶ Indirect addressing.



# Random Access Machine (RAM)

- ▶ Input tape and output tape (sequences of zeros and ones; unbounded length).
- ▶ Memory unit: infinite but countable number of registers  $R[0], R[1], R[2], \dots$
- ▶ Registers hold integers.
- ▶ Indirect addressing.



# Random Access Machine (RAM)

## Operations

- ▶ input operations (input tape  $\rightarrow R[i]$ )
  - ▶ READ  $i$
- ▶ output operations ( $R[i] \rightarrow$  output tape)
- ▶ register-register transfers
  - $R[i] \leftarrow R[j]$
  - $R[j] \leftarrow R[i]$
- ▶ indirect addressing
  - $R[i] \leftarrow R[R[j]]$   
loads the content of the  $j$ -th register into the  $i$ -th register
  - $R[R[j]] \leftarrow R[i]$   
loads the content of the  $j$ -th into the  $R[i]$ -th register

# Random Access Machine (RAM)

## Operations

- ▶ input operations (input tape  $\rightarrow R[i]$ )
  - ▶ READ  $i$
- ▶ output operations ( $R[i] \rightarrow$  output tape)
- ▶ register-register transfers
  - $R[i] \leftarrow R[j]$
  - $R[j] \leftarrow R[i]$
- ▶ indirect addressing
  - $R[i] \leftarrow R[R[j]]$   
loads the content of the  $j$ -th register into the  $i$ -th register
  - $R[R[i]] \leftarrow R[j]$   
loads the content of the  $j$ -th into the  $R[i]$ -th register

# Random Access Machine (RAM)

## Operations

- ▶ input operations (input tape  $\rightarrow R[i]$ )
  - ▶ READ  $i$
- ▶ output operations ( $R[i] \rightarrow$  output tape)
  - ▶ WRITE  $i$
- ▶ register-register transfers
  - $R[i] \leftarrow R[j]$
  - $R[j] \leftarrow R[i]$
- ▶ indirect addressing
  - $R[i] \leftarrow R[R[j]]$   
loads the content of the register  $R[j]$  into the register  $R[i]$
  - $R[R[i]] \leftarrow R[j]$   
loads the content of the register  $R[i]$  into the register  $R[j]$

# Random Access Machine (RAM)

## Operations

- ▶ input operations (input tape  $\rightarrow R[i]$ )
  - ▶ READ  $i$
- ▶ output operations ( $R[i] \rightarrow$  output tape)
  - ▶ WRITE  $i$
- ▶ register-register transfers

- ▶ indirect addressing

$R[i] \rightarrow R[j]$

reads the content of the register  $R[i]$  and stores it in  $R[j]$

$R[j] \rightarrow R[i]$

reads the content of the register  $R[j]$  and stores it in  $R[i]$

# Random Access Machine (RAM)

## Operations

- ▶ input operations (input tape  $\rightarrow R[i]$ )
  - ▶ READ  $i$
- ▶ output operations ( $R[i] \rightarrow$  output tape)
  - ▶ WRITE  $i$
- ▶ register-register transfers
  - ▶  $R[j] := R[i]$
  - ▶  $R[j] := 4$
- ▶ indirect addressing

$R[i] := R[R[i]]$

reads the contents of the register whose address is stored in register  $i$

$R[R[i]] := R[i]$

reads the address of the register whose address is stored in register  $i$



# Random Access Machine (RAM)

## Operations

- ▶ input operations (input tape  $\rightarrow R[i]$ )
  - ▶ READ  $i$
- ▶ output operations ( $R[i] \rightarrow$  output tape)
  - ▶ WRITE  $i$
- ▶ register-register transfers
  - ▶  $R[j] := R[i]$
  - ▶  $R[j] := 4$
- ▶ indirect addressing

# Random Access Machine (RAM)

## Operations

- ▶ input operations (input tape  $\rightarrow R[i]$ )
  - ▶ READ  $i$
- ▶ output operations ( $R[i] \rightarrow$  output tape)
  - ▶ WRITE  $i$
- ▶ register-register transfers
  - ▶  $R[j] := R[i]$
  - ▶  $R[j] := 4$
- ▶ indirect addressing

# Random Access Machine (RAM)

## Operations

- ▶ input operations (input tape  $\rightarrow R[i]$ )
  - ▶ READ  $i$
- ▶ output operations ( $R[i] \rightarrow$  output tape)
  - ▶ WRITE  $i$
- ▶ register-register transfers
  - ▶  $R[j] := R[i]$
  - ▶  $R[j] := 4$
- ▶ **indirect** addressing
  - ▶  $R[j] := R[R[i]]$   
loads the content of the  $R[i]$ -th into the  $j$ -th register
  - ▶  $R[R[i]] := R[j]$   
loads the content of the  $j$ -th into the  $R[i]$ -th register

# Random Access Machine (RAM)

## Operations

- ▶ input operations (input tape  $\rightarrow R[i]$ )
  - ▶ READ  $i$
- ▶ output operations ( $R[i] \rightarrow$  output tape)
  - ▶ WRITE  $i$
- ▶ register-register transfers
  - ▶  $R[j] := R[i]$
  - ▶  $R[j] := 4$
- ▶ **indirect** addressing
  - ▶  $R[j] := R[R[i]]$   
loads the content of the  $R[i]$ -th into the  $j$ -th register
  - ▶  $R[R[i]] := R[j]$   
loads the content of the  $j$ -th into the  $R[i]$ -th register

# Random Access Machine (RAM)

## Operations

- ▶ input operations (input tape  $\rightarrow R[i]$ )
  - ▶ READ  $i$
- ▶ output operations ( $R[i] \rightarrow$  output tape)
  - ▶ WRITE  $i$
- ▶ register-register transfers
  - ▶  $R[j] := R[i]$
  - ▶  $R[j] := 4$
- ▶ **indirect** addressing
  - ▶  $R[j] := R[R[i]]$   
loads the content of the  $R[i]$ -th into the  $j$ -th register
  - ▶  $R[R[i]] := R[j]$   
loads the content of the  $j$ -th into the  $R[i]$ -th register

# Random Access Machine (RAM)

## Operations

- ▶ branching (including loops) based on comparisons
  - ▶ `jump x`  
jumps to position  $x$  in the program;  
sets instruction counter to  $x$ ;  
reads the next operation to perform from register  $R[x]$
  - ▶ `jumpz x R[i]`  
jump to  $x$  if  $R[i] = 0$   
if not the instruction counter is increased by 1;
  - ▶ `jumpi i`  
jump to  $R[i]$  (indirect jump);
- ▶ arithmetic instructions:  $+$ ,  $-$ ,  $\times$ ,  $/$   
 $R[i] := R[i] + R[k]$   
 $R[i] := R[i] - R[k]$

# Random Access Machine (RAM)

## Operations

- ▶ branching (including loops) based on comparisons
  - ▶ `jump  $x$`   
jumps to position  $x$  in the program;  
sets instruction counter to  $x$ ;  
reads the next operation to perform from register  $R[x]$
  - ▶ `jumpz  $x$   $R[i]$`   
jump to  $x$  if  $R[i] = 0$   
if not the instruction counter is increased by 1;
  - ▶ `jumpi  $i$`   
jump to  $R[i]$  (indirect jump);
- ▶ arithmetic instructions: `+`, `-`, `×`, `/`

# Random Access Machine (RAM)

## Operations

- ▶ branching (including loops) based on comparisons
  - ▶ `jump  $x$`   
jumps to position  $x$  in the program;  
sets instruction counter to  $x$ ;  
reads the next operation to perform from register  $R[x]$
  - ▶ `jumpz  $x$   $R[i]$`   
jump to  $x$  if  $R[i] = 0$   
if not the instruction counter is increased by 1;
  - ▶ `jumpi  $i$`   
jump to  $R[i]$  (indirect jump);
- ▶ arithmetic instructions:  $+$ ,  $-$ ,  $\times$ ,  $/$



# Random Access Machine (RAM)

## Operations

- ▶ branching (including loops) based on comparisons
  - ▶ `jump  $x$`   
jumps to position  $x$  in the program;  
sets instruction counter to  $x$ ;  
reads the next operation to perform from register  $R[x]$
  - ▶ `jumpz  $x$   $R[i]$`   
jump to  $x$  if  $R[i] = 0$   
if not the instruction counter is increased by 1;
  - ▶ `jumpi  $i$`   
jump to  $R[i]$  (indirect jump);
- ▶ arithmetic instructions:  $+$ ,  $-$ ,  $\times$ ,  $/$

# Random Access Machine (RAM)

## Operations

- ▶ branching (including loops) based on comparisons
  - ▶ `jump  $x$`   
jumps to position  $x$  in the program;  
sets instruction counter to  $x$ ;  
reads the next operation to perform from register  $R[x]$
  - ▶ `jumpz  $x$   $R[i]$`   
jump to  $x$  if  $R[i] = 0$   
if not the instruction counter is increased by 1;
  - ▶ `jumpi  $i$`   
jump to  $R[i]$  (indirect jump);
- ▶ arithmetic instructions:  $+$ ,  $-$ ,  $\times$ ,  $/$ 
  - ▶  $R[i] := R[j] + R[k];$
  - ▶  $R[i] := -R[k];$

# Random Access Machine (RAM)

## Operations

- ▶ branching (including loops) based on comparisons
  - ▶ `jump  $x$`   
jumps to position  $x$  in the program;  
sets instruction counter to  $x$ ;  
reads the next operation to perform from register  $R[x]$
  - ▶ `jumpz  $x$   $R[i]$`   
jump to  $x$  if  $R[i] = 0$   
if not the instruction counter is increased by 1;
  - ▶ `jumpi  $i$`   
jump to  $R[i]$  (indirect jump);
- ▶ arithmetic instructions:  $+$ ,  $-$ ,  $\times$ ,  $/$ 
  - ▶  $R[i] := R[j] + R[k];$
  - ▶  $R[i] := -R[k];$

# Model of Computation

- ▶ **uniform** cost model

Every operation takes time 1.

- ▶ **logarithmic** cost model

The cost depends on the content of memory cells:

- ▶ The time for a step is equal to the largest operand involved.

- ▶ The amount of space of a register is equal to the length (in bits) of the largest value ever stored in it.

- ▶ The time for a step is equal to the length of the largest value ever stored in it.

**Bounded word RAM model:** cost is uniform but the largest value stored in a register may not exceed  $w$ , where usually  $w = \log_2 n$ .

# Model of Computation

- ▶ **uniform** cost model  
Every operation takes time 1.
- ▶ **logarithmic** cost model  
The cost depends on the content of memory cells:
  - ▶ The time for a step is equal to the largest operand involved;
  - ▶ The storage space of a register is equal to the length (in bits) of the largest value ever stored in it.

**Bounded word RAM model:** cost is uniform but the largest value stored in a register may not exceed  $w$ , where usually  $w = \log_2 n$ .

# Model of Computation

- ▶ **uniform** cost model  
Every operation takes time 1.
- ▶ **logarithmic** cost model  
The cost depends on the content of memory cells:
  - ▶ The time for a step is equal to the largest operand involved;
  - ▶ The storage space of a register is equal to the length (in bits) of the largest value ever stored in it.

**Bounded word RAM model:** cost is uniform but the largest value stored in a register may not exceed  $w$ , where usually  $w = \log_2 n$ .

# Model of Computation

- ▶ **uniform** cost model  
Every operation takes time 1.
- ▶ **logarithmic** cost model  
The cost depends on the content of memory cells:
  - ▶ The time for a step is equal to the largest operand involved;
  - ▶ The storage space of a register is equal to the length (in bits) of the largest value ever stored in it.

Bounded word RAM model: cost is uniform but the largest value stored in a register may not exceed  $w$ , where usually  $w = \log_2 n$ .

# Model of Computation

- ▶ **uniform** cost model  
Every operation takes time 1.
- ▶ **logarithmic** cost model  
The cost depends on the content of memory cells:
  - ▶ The time for a step is equal to the largest operand involved;
  - ▶ The storage space of a register is equal to the length (in bits) of the largest value ever stored in it.

**Bounded word RAM model:** cost is uniform but the largest value stored in a register may not exceed  $w$ , where usually  $w = \log_2 n$ .



# 4 Modelling Issues

## Example 2

### Algorithm 1 RepeatedSquaring( $n$ )

```
1:  $r \leftarrow 2$ ;  
2: for  $i = 1 \rightarrow n$  do  
3:    $r \leftarrow r^2$   
4: return  $r$ 
```

# 4 Modelling Issues

## Example 2

### Algorithm 1 RepeatedSquaring( $n$ )

```
1:  $r \leftarrow 2$ ;  
2: for  $i = 1 \rightarrow n$  do  
3:    $r \leftarrow r^2$   
4: return  $r$ 
```

- ▶ running time:
  - ▶ uniform model:  $n$  steps
  - ▶ logarithmic model:  $1 + 2 + 4 + \dots + 2^n = 2^{n+1} - 1 = \Theta(2^n)$
- ▶ space requirement:

# 4 Modelling Issues

## Example 2

### Algorithm 1 RepeatedSquaring( $n$ )

```
1:  $r \leftarrow 2$ ;  
2: for  $i = 1 \rightarrow n$  do  
3:    $r \leftarrow r^2$   
4: return  $r$ 
```

- ▶ running time:
  - ▶ uniform model:  $n$  steps
  - ▶ logarithmic model:  $1 + 2 + 4 + \dots + 2^n = 2^{n+1} - 1 = \Theta(2^n)$
- ▶ space requirement:

# 4 Modelling Issues

## Example 2

### Algorithm 1 RepeatedSquaring( $n$ )

```
1:  $r \leftarrow 2$ ;  
2: for  $i = 1 \rightarrow n$  do  
3:    $r \leftarrow r^2$   
4: return  $r$ 
```

- ▶ running time:
  - ▶ uniform model:  $n$  steps
  - ▶ logarithmic model:  $1 + 2 + 4 + \dots + 2^n = 2^{n+1} - 1 = \Theta(2^n)$
- ▶ space requirement:

# 4 Modelling Issues

## Example 2

### Algorithm 1 RepeatedSquaring( $n$ )

```
1:  $r \leftarrow 2$ ;  
2: for  $i = 1 \rightarrow n$  do  
3:    $r \leftarrow r^2$   
4: return  $r$ 
```

- ▶ running time:
  - ▶ uniform model:  $n$  steps
  - ▶ logarithmic model:  $1 + 2 + 4 + \dots + 2^n = 2^{n+1} - 1 = \Theta(2^n)$
- ▶ space requirement:
  - ▶ uniform model:  $\mathcal{O}(1)$
  - ▶ logarithmic model:  $\mathcal{O}(2^n)$

# 4 Modelling Issues

## Example 2

### Algorithm 1 RepeatedSquaring( $n$ )

```
1:  $r \leftarrow 2$ ;  
2: for  $i = 1 \rightarrow n$  do  
3:    $r \leftarrow r^2$   
4: return  $r$ 
```

- ▶ running time:
  - ▶ uniform model:  $n$  steps
  - ▶ logarithmic model:  $1 + 2 + 4 + \dots + 2^n = 2^{n+1} - 1 = \Theta(2^n)$
- ▶ space requirement:
  - ▶ uniform model:  $\mathcal{O}(1)$
  - ▶ logarithmic model:  $\mathcal{O}(2^n)$

# 4 Modelling Issues

## Example 2

### Algorithm 1 RepeatedSquaring( $n$ )

```
1:  $r \leftarrow 2$ ;  
2: for  $i = 1 \rightarrow n$  do  
3:    $r \leftarrow r^2$   
4: return  $r$ 
```

- ▶ running time:
  - ▶ uniform model:  $n$  steps
  - ▶ logarithmic model:  $1 + 2 + 4 + \dots + 2^n = 2^{n+1} - 1 = \Theta(2^n)$
- ▶ space requirement:
  - ▶ uniform model:  $\mathcal{O}(1)$
  - ▶ logarithmic model:  $\mathcal{O}(2^n)$

There are **different types of complexity bounds**:

- ▶ **best-case** complexity:

$$C_{bc}(n) := \min\{C(x) \mid |x| = n\}$$

Usually easy to analyze, but not very meaningful.

- ▶ **worst-case** complexity:

$$C_{wc}(n) := \max\{C(x) \mid |x| = n\}$$

Usually moderately easy to analyze; sometimes too pessimistic.

- ▶ **average case** complexity:

$$C_{avg}(n) := \frac{1}{|I_n|} \sum_{|x|=n} C(x)$$

more general: probability measure  $\mu$

$$C_{avg}(n) := \sum_{x \in I_n} \mu(x) \cdot C(x)$$



There are **different types of complexity bounds**:

- ▶ **best-case** complexity:

$$C_{bc}(n) := \min\{C(x) \mid |x| = n\}$$

Usually easy to analyze, but not very meaningful.

- ▶ **worst-case** complexity:

$$C_{wc}(n) := \max\{C(x) \mid |x| = n\}$$

Usually moderately easy to analyze; sometimes too pessimistic.

- ▶ **average case** complexity:

$$C_{avg}(n) := \frac{1}{|I_n|} \sum_{|x|=n} C(x)$$

more general: probability measure  $\mu$

$$C_{avg}(n) := \sum_{x \in I_n} \mu(x) \cdot C(x)$$

There are **different types of complexity bounds**:

- ▶ **best-case** complexity:

$$C_{bc}(n) := \min\{C(x) \mid |x| = n\}$$

Usually easy to analyze, but not very meaningful.

- ▶ **worst-case** complexity:

$$C_{wc}(n) := \max\{C(x) \mid |x| = n\}$$

Usually moderately easy to analyze; sometimes too pessimistic.

- ▶ **average case** complexity:

$$C_{avg}(n) := \frac{1}{|I_n|} \sum_{|x|=n} C(x)$$

more general: probability measure  $\mu$

$$C_{avg}(n) := \sum_{x \in I_n} \mu(x) \cdot C(x)$$

There are **different types of complexity bounds**:

- ▶ **best-case** complexity:

$$C_{bc}(n) := \min\{C(x) \mid |x| = n\}$$

Usually easy to analyze, but not very meaningful.

- ▶ **worst-case** complexity:

$$C_{wc}(n) := \max\{C(x) \mid |x| = n\}$$

Usually moderately easy to analyze; sometimes too pessimistic.

- ▶ **average case** complexity:

$$C_{avg}(n) := \frac{1}{|I_n|} \sum_{|x|=n} C(x)$$

more general: probability measure  $\mu$

$$C_{avg}(n) := \sum_{x \in I_n} \mu(x) \cdot C(x)$$

There are **different types of complexity bounds**:

- ▶ **amortized** complexity:

The average cost of data structure operations over a worst case sequence of operations.

- ▶ **randomized** complexity:

The algorithm may use random bits. Expected running time (over all possible choices of random bits) for a fixed input  $x$ . Then take the worst-case over all  $x$  with  $|x| = n$ .

There are **different types of complexity bounds**:

- ▶ **amortized** complexity:

The average cost of data structure operations over a worst case sequence of operations.

- ▶ **randomized** complexity:

The algorithm may use random bits. Expected running time (over all possible choices of random bits) for a fixed input  $x$ . Then take the worst-case over all  $x$  with  $|x| = n$ .

## 5 Asymptotic Notation

We are usually not interested in exact running times, but only in an asymptotic classification of the running time, that ignores constant factors and constant additive offsets.

## 5 Asymptotic Notation

We are usually not interested in exact running times, but only in an asymptotic classification of the running time, that ignores constant factors and constant additive offsets.

- ▶ We are usually interested in the running times for large values of  $n$ . Then constant additive terms do not play an important role.
- ▶ An exact analysis (e.g. *exactly* counting the number of operations in a RAM) may be hard, but wouldn't lead to more precise results as the computational model is already quite a distance from reality.
- ▶ A linear speed-up (i.e., by a constant factor) is always possible by e.g. implementing the algorithm on a faster machine.
- ▶ Running time should be expressed by simple functions.

## 5 Asymptotic Notation

We are usually not interested in exact running times, but only in an asymptotic classification of the running time, that ignores constant factors and constant additive offsets.

- ▶ We are usually interested in the running times for large values of  $n$ . Then constant additive terms do not play an important role.
- ▶ An exact analysis (e.g. *exactly* counting the number of operations in a RAM) may be hard, but wouldn't lead to more precise results as the computational model is already quite a distance from reality.
- ▶ A linear speed-up (i.e., by a constant factor) is always possible by e.g. implementing the algorithm on a faster machine.
- ▶ Running time should be expressed by simple functions.



## 5 Asymptotic Notation

We are usually not interested in exact running times, but only in an asymptotic classification of the running time, that ignores constant factors and constant additive offsets.

- ▶ We are usually interested in the running times for large values of  $n$ . Then constant additive terms do not play an important role.
- ▶ An exact analysis (e.g. *exactly* counting the number of operations in a RAM) may be hard, but wouldn't lead to more precise results as the computational model is already quite a distance from reality.
- ▶ A linear speed-up (i.e., by a constant factor) is always possible by e.g. implementing the algorithm on a faster machine.
- ▶ Running time should be expressed by simple functions.

## 5 Asymptotic Notation

We are usually not interested in exact running times, but only in an asymptotic classification of the running time, that ignores constant factors and constant additive offsets.

- ▶ We are usually interested in the running times for large values of  $n$ . Then constant additive terms do not play an important role.
- ▶ An exact analysis (e.g. *exactly* counting the number of operations in a RAM) may be hard, but wouldn't lead to more precise results as the computational model is already quite a distance from reality.
- ▶ A linear speed-up (i.e., by a constant factor) is always possible by e.g. implementing the algorithm on a faster machine.
- ▶ Running time should be expressed by simple functions.

# Asymptotic Notation

## Formal Definition

Let  $f$  denote functions from  $\mathbb{N}$  to  $\mathbb{R}^+$ .

- ▶  $\mathcal{O}(f) = \{g \mid \exists c > 0 \exists n_0 \in \mathbb{N}_0 \forall n \geq n_0 : [g(n) \leq c \cdot f(n)]\}$   
(set of functions that asymptotically grow **not faster** than  $f$ )

# Asymptotic Notation

## Formal Definition

Let  $f$  denote functions from  $\mathbb{N}$  to  $\mathbb{R}^+$ .

- ▶  $\mathcal{O}(f) = \{g \mid \exists c > 0 \exists n_0 \in \mathbb{N}_0 \forall n \geq n_0 : [g(n) \leq c \cdot f(n)]\}$   
(set of functions that asymptotically grow **not faster** than  $f$ )
- ▶  $\Omega(f) = \{g \mid \exists c > 0 \exists n_0 \in \mathbb{N}_0 \forall n \geq n_0 : [g(n) \geq c \cdot f(n)]\}$   
(set of functions that asymptotically grow **not slower** than  $f$ )

# Asymptotic Notation

## Formal Definition

Let  $f$  denote functions from  $\mathbb{N}$  to  $\mathbb{R}^+$ .

- ▶  $\mathcal{O}(f) = \{g \mid \exists c > 0 \exists n_0 \in \mathbb{N}_0 \forall n \geq n_0 : [g(n) \leq c \cdot f(n)]\}$   
(set of functions that asymptotically grow **not faster** than  $f$ )
- ▶  $\Omega(f) = \{g \mid \exists c > 0 \exists n_0 \in \mathbb{N}_0 \forall n \geq n_0 : [g(n) \geq c \cdot f(n)]\}$   
(set of functions that asymptotically grow **not slower** than  $f$ )
- ▶  $\Theta(f) = \Omega(f) \cap \mathcal{O}(f)$   
(functions that asymptotically have **the same growth** as  $f$ )

# Asymptotic Notation

## Formal Definition

Let  $f$  denote functions from  $\mathbb{N}$  to  $\mathbb{R}^+$ .

- ▶  $\mathcal{O}(f) = \{g \mid \exists c > 0 \exists n_0 \in \mathbb{N}_0 \forall n \geq n_0 : [g(n) \leq c \cdot f(n)]\}$   
(set of functions that asymptotically grow **not faster** than  $f$ )
- ▶  $\Omega(f) = \{g \mid \exists c > 0 \exists n_0 \in \mathbb{N}_0 \forall n \geq n_0 : [g(n) \geq c \cdot f(n)]\}$   
(set of functions that asymptotically grow **not slower** than  $f$ )
- ▶  $\Theta(f) = \Omega(f) \cap \mathcal{O}(f)$   
(functions that asymptotically have **the same growth** as  $f$ )
- ▶  $o(f) = \{g \mid \forall c > 0 \exists n_0 \in \mathbb{N}_0 \forall n \geq n_0 : [g(n) \leq c \cdot f(n)]\}$   
(set of functions that asymptotically grow **slower** than  $f$ )

# Asymptotic Notation

## Formal Definition

Let  $f$  denote functions from  $\mathbb{N}$  to  $\mathbb{R}^+$ .

- ▶  $\mathcal{O}(f) = \{g \mid \exists c > 0 \exists n_0 \in \mathbb{N}_0 \forall n \geq n_0 : [g(n) \leq c \cdot f(n)]\}$   
(set of functions that asymptotically grow **not faster** than  $f$ )
- ▶  $\Omega(f) = \{g \mid \exists c > 0 \exists n_0 \in \mathbb{N}_0 \forall n \geq n_0 : [g(n) \geq c \cdot f(n)]\}$   
(set of functions that asymptotically grow **not slower** than  $f$ )
- ▶  $\Theta(f) = \Omega(f) \cap \mathcal{O}(f)$   
(functions that asymptotically have **the same growth** as  $f$ )
- ▶  $o(f) = \{g \mid \forall c > 0 \exists n_0 \in \mathbb{N}_0 \forall n \geq n_0 : [g(n) \leq c \cdot f(n)]\}$   
(set of functions that asymptotically grow **slower** than  $f$ )
- ▶  $\omega(f) = \{g \mid \forall c > 0 \exists n_0 \in \mathbb{N}_0 \forall n \geq n_0 : [g(n) \geq c \cdot f(n)]\}$   
(set of functions that asymptotically grow **faster** than  $f$ )

# Asymptotic Notation

There is an equivalent definition using limes notation.  $f$  and  $g$  are functions from  $\mathbb{N}$  to  $\mathbb{R}^+$ .

▶  $g \in \mathcal{O}(f): 0 \leq \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{g(n)}{f(n)} < \infty$



# Asymptotic Notation

There is an equivalent definition using limes notation.  $f$  and  $g$  are functions from  $\mathbb{N}$  to  $\mathbb{R}^+$ .

$$\blacktriangleright g \in \mathcal{O}(f): 0 \leq \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{g(n)}{f(n)} < \infty$$

$$\blacktriangleright g \in \Omega(f): 0 < \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{g(n)}{f(n)} \leq \infty$$

# Asymptotic Notation

There is an equivalent definition using limes notation.  $f$  and  $g$  are functions from  $\mathbb{N}$  to  $\mathbb{R}^+$ .

$$\blacktriangleright g \in \mathcal{O}(f): 0 \leq \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{g(n)}{f(n)} < \infty$$

$$\blacktriangleright g \in \Omega(f): 0 < \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{g(n)}{f(n)} \leq \infty$$

$$\blacktriangleright g \in \Theta(f): 0 < \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{g(n)}{f(n)} < \infty$$

# Asymptotic Notation

There is an equivalent definition using limes notation.  $f$  and  $g$  are functions from  $\mathbb{N}$  to  $\mathbb{R}^+$ .

$$\blacktriangleright g \in \mathcal{O}(f): 0 \leq \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{g(n)}{f(n)} < \infty$$

$$\blacktriangleright g \in \Omega(f): 0 < \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{g(n)}{f(n)} \leq \infty$$

$$\blacktriangleright g \in \Theta(f): 0 < \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{g(n)}{f(n)} < \infty$$

$$\blacktriangleright g \in o(f): \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{g(n)}{f(n)} = 0$$

# Asymptotic Notation

There is an equivalent definition using limes notation.  $f$  and  $g$  are functions from  $\mathbb{N}$  to  $\mathbb{R}^+$ .

$$\blacktriangleright g \in \mathcal{O}(f): 0 \leq \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{g(n)}{f(n)} < \infty$$

$$\blacktriangleright g \in \Omega(f): 0 < \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{g(n)}{f(n)} \leq \infty$$

$$\blacktriangleright g \in \Theta(f): 0 < \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{g(n)}{f(n)} < \infty$$

$$\blacktriangleright g \in o(f): \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{g(n)}{f(n)} = 0$$

$$\blacktriangleright g \in \omega(f): \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{g(n)}{f(n)} = \infty$$

# Asymptotic Notation

## Abuse of notation

1. People write  $f = \mathcal{O}(g)$ , when they mean  $f \in \mathcal{O}(g)$ . This is **not** an equality (how could a function be equal to a set of functions).
2. People write  $f(n) = \mathcal{O}(g(n))$ , when they mean  $f \in \mathcal{O}(g)$ , with  $f: \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^+, n \mapsto f(n)$ , and  $g: \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^+, n \mapsto g(n)$ .
3. People write e.g.  $h(n) = f(n) + o(g(n))$  when they mean that there exists a function  $z: \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^+, n \mapsto z(n), z \in o(g)$  such that  $h(n) = f(n) + z(n)$ .
4. People write  $\mathcal{O}(f(n)) = \mathcal{O}(g(n))$ , when they mean  $\mathcal{O}(f(n)) \subseteq \mathcal{O}(g(n))$ . Again this is not an equality.

# Asymptotic Notation

## Abuse of notation

1. People write  $f = \mathcal{O}(g)$ , when they mean  $f \in \mathcal{O}(g)$ . This is **not** an equality (how could a function be equal to a set of functions).
2. People write  $f(n) = \mathcal{O}(g(n))$ , when they mean  $f \in \mathcal{O}(g)$ , with  $f : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^+, n \mapsto f(n)$ , and  $g : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^+, n \mapsto g(n)$ .
3. People write e.g.  $h(n) = f(n) + o(g(n))$  when they mean that there exists a function  $z : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^+, n \mapsto z(n), z \in o(g)$  such that  $h(n) = f(n) + z(n)$ .
4. People write  $\mathcal{O}(f(n)) = \mathcal{O}(g(n))$ , when they mean  $\mathcal{O}(f(n)) \subseteq \mathcal{O}(g(n))$ . Again this is not an equality.

# Asymptotic Notation

## Abuse of notation

1. People write  $f = \mathcal{O}(g)$ , when they mean  $f \in \mathcal{O}(g)$ . This is **not** an equality (how could a function be equal to a set of functions).
2. People write  $f(n) = \mathcal{O}(g(n))$ , when they mean  $f \in \mathcal{O}(g)$ , with  $f : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^+$ ,  $n \mapsto f(n)$ , and  $g : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^+$ ,  $n \mapsto g(n)$ .
3. People write e.g.  $h(n) = f(n) + o(g(n))$  when they mean that there exists a function  $z : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^+$ ,  $n \mapsto z(n)$ ,  $z \in o(g)$  such that  $h(n) = f(n) + z(n)$ .
4. People write  $\mathcal{O}(f(n)) = \mathcal{O}(g(n))$ , when they mean  $\mathcal{O}(f(n)) \subseteq \mathcal{O}(g(n))$ . Again this is not an equality.

# Asymptotic Notation

## Abuse of notation

1. People write  $f = \mathcal{O}(g)$ , when they mean  $f \in \mathcal{O}(g)$ . This is **not** an equality (how could a function be equal to a set of functions).
2. People write  $f(n) = \mathcal{O}(g(n))$ , when they mean  $f \in \mathcal{O}(g)$ , with  $f : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^+, n \mapsto f(n)$ , and  $g : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^+, n \mapsto g(n)$ .
3. People write e.g.  $h(n) = f(n) + o(g(n))$  when they mean that there exists a function  $z : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^+, n \mapsto z(n), z \in o(g)$  such that  $h(n) = f(n) + z(n)$ .
4. People write  $\mathcal{O}(f(n)) = \mathcal{O}(g(n))$ , when they mean  $\mathcal{O}(f(n)) \subseteq \mathcal{O}(g(n))$ . Again this is not an equality.



# Asymptotic Notation in Equations

How do we interpret an expression like:

$$2n^2 + 3n + 1 = 2n^2 + \Theta(n)$$

Here,  $\Theta(n)$  stands for an **anonymous function** in the set  $\Theta(n)$  that makes the expression true.

Note that  $\Theta(n)$  is on the right hand side, otw. this interpretation is wrong.

# Asymptotic Notation in Equations

How do we interpret an expression like:

$$2n^2 + 3n + 1 = 2n^2 + \Theta(n)$$

Here,  $\Theta(n)$  stands for an **anonymous function** in the set  $\Theta(n)$  that makes the expression true.

Note that  $\Theta(n)$  is on the right hand side, otw. this interpretation is wrong.

# Asymptotic Notation in Equations

How do we interpret an expression like:

$$2n^2 + 3n + 1 = 2n^2 + \Theta(n)$$

Here,  $\Theta(n)$  stands for an **anonymous function** in the set  $\Theta(n)$  that makes the expression true.

Note that  $\Theta(n)$  is on the right hand side, otw. this interpretation is wrong.

# Asymptotic Notation in Equations

How do we interpret an expression like:

$$2n^2 + \mathcal{O}(n) = \Theta(n^2)$$

Regardless of how we choose the anonymous function  $f(n) \in \mathcal{O}(n)$  there is an anonymous function  $g(n) \in \Theta(n^2)$  that makes the expression true.

# Asymptotic Notation in Equations

How do we interpret an expression like:

$$2n^2 + \mathcal{O}(n) = \Theta(n^2)$$

Regardless of how we choose the anonymous function  $f(n) \in \mathcal{O}(n)$  there is an anonymous function  $g(n) \in \Theta(n^2)$  that makes the expression true.

# Asymptotic Notation in Equations

How do we interpret an expression like:

$$\sum_{i=1}^n \Theta(i) = \Theta(n^2)$$

Careful!

“It is understood” that every occurrence of an  $\Theta$ -symbol (or  $\Theta, \Omega, o, \omega$ ) on the left represents **one anonymous function**.

Hence, the left side is **not** equal to

$$\Theta(1) + \Theta(2) + \cdots + \Theta(n-1) + \Theta(n)$$

# Asymptotic Notation in Equations

How do we interpret an expression like:

$$\sum_{i=1}^n \Theta(i) = \Theta(n^2)$$

**Careful!**

“It is understood” that every occurrence of an  $\Theta$ -symbol (or  $\Theta, \Omega, o, \omega$ ) on the left represents **one anonymous function**.

Hence, the left side is **not** equal to

$$\Theta(1) + \Theta(2) + \cdots + \Theta(n-1) + \Theta(n)$$

# Asymptotic Notation in Equations

How do we interpret an expression like:

$$\sum_{i=1}^n \Theta(i) = \Theta(n^2)$$

**Careful!**

“It is understood” that every occurrence of an  $\Theta$ -symbol (or  $\Theta, \Omega, o, \omega$ ) on the left represents **one anonymous function**.

Hence, the left side is **not** equal to

$$\Theta(1) + \Theta(2) + \dots + \Theta(n-1) + \Theta(n)$$



# Asymptotic Notation in Equations

We can view an expression containing asymptotic notation as generating a set:

$$n^2 \cdot \mathcal{O}(n) + \mathcal{O}(\log n)$$

represents

$$\{f : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^+ \mid f(n) = n^2 \cdot g(n) + h(n)\}$$

$$\text{with } g(n) \in \mathcal{O}(n) \text{ and } h(n) \in \mathcal{O}(\log n)\}$$

# Asymptotic Notation in Equations

Then an asymptotic equation can be interpreted as containment btw. two sets:

$$n^2 \cdot \mathcal{O}(n) + \mathcal{O}(\log n) = \Theta(n^2)$$

represents

$$n^2 \cdot \mathcal{O}(n) + \mathcal{O}(\log n) \subseteq \Theta(n^2)$$

# Asymptotic Notation

## Lemma 3

Let  $f, g$  be functions with the property

$\exists n_0 > 0 \forall n \geq n_0 : f(n) > 0$  (the same for  $g$ ). Then

- ▶  $c \cdot f(n) \in \Theta(f(n))$  for any constant  $c$
- ▶  $\mathcal{O}(f(n)) + \mathcal{O}(g(n)) = \mathcal{O}(f(n) + g(n))$
- ▶  $\mathcal{O}(f(n)) \cdot \mathcal{O}(g(n)) = \mathcal{O}(f(n) \cdot g(n))$
- ▶  $\mathcal{O}(f(n)) + \mathcal{O}(g(n)) = \mathcal{O}(\max\{f(n), g(n)\})$

The expressions also hold for  $\Omega$ . Note that this means that  $f(n) + g(n) \in \Theta(\max\{f(n), g(n)\})$ .

# Asymptotic Notation

## Lemma 3

Let  $f, g$  be functions with the property

$\exists n_0 > 0 \forall n \geq n_0 : f(n) > 0$  (the same for  $g$ ). Then

- ▶  $c \cdot f(n) \in \Theta(f(n))$  for any constant  $c$
- ▶  $\mathcal{O}(f(n)) + \mathcal{O}(g(n)) = \mathcal{O}(f(n) + g(n))$
- ▶  $\mathcal{O}(f(n)) \cdot \mathcal{O}(g(n)) = \mathcal{O}(f(n) \cdot g(n))$
- ▶  $\mathcal{O}(f(n)) + \mathcal{O}(g(n)) = \mathcal{O}(\max\{f(n), g(n)\})$

The expressions also hold for  $\Omega$ . Note that this means that  $f(n) + g(n) \in \Theta(\max\{f(n), g(n)\})$ .

# Asymptotic Notation

## Lemma 3

Let  $f, g$  be functions with the property

$\exists n_0 > 0 \forall n \geq n_0 : f(n) > 0$  (the same for  $g$ ). Then

- ▶  $c \cdot f(n) \in \Theta(f(n))$  for any constant  $c$
- ▶  $\mathcal{O}(f(n)) + \mathcal{O}(g(n)) = \mathcal{O}(f(n) + g(n))$
- ▶  $\mathcal{O}(f(n)) \cdot \mathcal{O}(g(n)) = \mathcal{O}(f(n) \cdot g(n))$
- ▶  $\mathcal{O}(f(n)) + \mathcal{O}(g(n)) = \mathcal{O}(\max\{f(n), g(n)\})$

The expressions also hold for  $\Omega$ . Note that this means that  $f(n) + g(n) \in \Theta(\max\{f(n), g(n)\})$ .

# Asymptotic Notation

## Lemma 3

Let  $f, g$  be functions with the property

$\exists n_0 > 0 \forall n \geq n_0 : f(n) > 0$  (the same for  $g$ ). Then

- ▶  $c \cdot f(n) \in \Theta(f(n))$  for any constant  $c$
- ▶  $\mathcal{O}(f(n)) + \mathcal{O}(g(n)) = \mathcal{O}(f(n) + g(n))$
- ▶  $\mathcal{O}(f(n)) \cdot \mathcal{O}(g(n)) = \mathcal{O}(f(n) \cdot g(n))$
- ▶  $\mathcal{O}(f(n)) + \mathcal{O}(g(n)) = \mathcal{O}(\max\{f(n), g(n)\})$

*The expressions also hold for  $\Omega$ . Note that this means that  $f(n) + g(n) \in \Theta(\max\{f(n), g(n)\})$ .*

# Asymptotic Notation

## Lemma 3

Let  $f, g$  be functions with the property

$\exists n_0 > 0 \forall n \geq n_0 : f(n) > 0$  (the same for  $g$ ). Then

- ▶  $c \cdot f(n) \in \Theta(f(n))$  for any constant  $c$
- ▶  $\mathcal{O}(f(n)) + \mathcal{O}(g(n)) = \mathcal{O}(f(n) + g(n))$
- ▶  $\mathcal{O}(f(n)) \cdot \mathcal{O}(g(n)) = \mathcal{O}(f(n) \cdot g(n))$
- ▶  $\mathcal{O}(f(n)) + \mathcal{O}(g(n)) = \mathcal{O}(\max\{f(n), g(n)\})$

The expressions also hold for  $\Omega$ . Note that this means that  $f(n) + g(n) \in \Theta(\max\{f(n), g(n)\})$ .

# Asymptotic Notation

## Comments

- ▶ Do not use asymptotic notation within induction proofs.
- ▶ For any constants  $a, b$  we have  $\log_a n = \Theta(\log_b n)$ .  
Therefore, we will usually ignore the base of a logarithm within asymptotic notation.
- ▶ In general  $\log n = \log_2 n$ , i.e., we use 2 as the default base for the logarithm.



# Asymptotic Notation

## Comments

- ▶ Do not use asymptotic notation within induction proofs.
- ▶ For any constants  $a, b$  we have  $\log_a n = \Theta(\log_b n)$ .  
Therefore, we will usually ignore the base of a logarithm within asymptotic notation.
- ▶ In general  $\log n = \log_2 n$ , i.e., we use 2 as the default base for the logarithm.

# Asymptotic Notation

## Comments

- ▶ Do not use asymptotic notation within induction proofs.
- ▶ For any constants  $a, b$  we have  $\log_a n = \Theta(\log_b n)$ .  
Therefore, we will usually ignore the base of a logarithm within asymptotic notation.
- ▶ In general  $\log n = \log_2 n$ , i.e., we use 2 as the default base for the logarithm.

# Asymptotic Notation

In general asymptotic classification of running times is a good measure for comparing algorithms:

- ▶ If the running time analysis is tight and actually occurs in practise (i.e., the asymptotic bound is not a purely theoretical worst-case bound), then the algorithm that has better asymptotic running time will always outperform a weaker algorithm for large enough values of  $n$ .
- ▶ However, suppose that I have two algorithms:

# Asymptotic Notation

In general asymptotic classification of running times is a good measure for comparing algorithms:

- ▶ If the running time analysis is tight and actually occurs in practise (i.e., the asymptotic bound is not a purely theoretical worst-case bound), then the algorithm that has better asymptotic running time will always outperform a weaker algorithm for large enough values of  $n$ .
- ▶ However, suppose that I have two algorithms:
  - ▶ Algorithm A. Running time  $f(n) = 1000 \log n = \mathcal{O}(\log n)$ .
  - ▶ Algorithm B. Running time  $g(n) = \log^2 n$ .

Clearly  $f = o(g)$ . However, as long as  $\log n \leq 1000$  Algorithm B will be more efficient.

# Asymptotic Notation

In general asymptotic classification of running times is a good measure for comparing algorithms:

- ▶ If the running time analysis is tight and actually occurs in practise (i.e., the asymptotic bound is not a purely theoretical worst-case bound), then the algorithm that has better asymptotic running time will always outperform a weaker algorithm for large enough values of  $n$ .
- ▶ However, suppose that I have two algorithms:
  - ▶ Algorithm A. Running time  $f(n) = 1000 \log n = \mathcal{O}(\log n)$ .
  - ▶ Algorithm B. Running time  $g(n) = \log^2 n$ .

Clearly  $f = o(g)$ . However, as long as  $\log n \leq 1000$  Algorithm B will be more efficient.

# Asymptotic Notation

In general asymptotic classification of running times is a good measure for comparing algorithms:

- ▶ If the running time analysis is tight and actually occurs in practise (i.e., the asymptotic bound is not a purely theoretical worst-case bound), then the algorithm that has better asymptotic running time will always outperform a weaker algorithm for large enough values of  $n$ .
- ▶ However, suppose that I have two algorithms:
  - ▶ Algorithm A. Running time  $f(n) = 1000 \log n = \mathcal{O}(\log n)$ .
  - ▶ Algorithm B. Running time  $g(n) = \log^2 n$ .

Clearly  $f = o(g)$ . However, as long as  $\log n \leq 1000$  Algorithm B will be more efficient.

# Asymptotic Notation

In general asymptotic classification of running times is a good measure for comparing algorithms:

- ▶ If the running time analysis is tight and actually occurs in practise (i.e., the asymptotic bound is not a purely theoretical worst-case bound), then the algorithm that has better asymptotic running time will always outperform a weaker algorithm for large enough values of  $n$ .
- ▶ However, suppose that I have two algorithms:
  - ▶ Algorithm A. Running time  $f(n) = 1000 \log n = \mathcal{O}(\log n)$ .
  - ▶ Algorithm B. Running time  $g(n) = \log^2 n$ .

Clearly  $f = o(g)$ . However, as long as  $\log n \leq 1000$  Algorithm B will be more efficient.

## 6 Recurrences

### Algorithm 2 mergesort(list $L$ )

```
1:  $n \leftarrow \text{size}(L)$ 
2: if  $n \leq 1$  return  $L$ 
3:  $L_1 \leftarrow L[1 \cdots \lfloor \frac{n}{2} \rfloor]$ 
4:  $L_2 \leftarrow L[\lfloor \frac{n}{2} \rfloor + 1 \cdots n]$ 
5: mergesort( $L_1$ )
6: mergesort( $L_2$ )
7:  $L \leftarrow \text{merge}(L_1, L_2)$ 
8: return  $L$ 
```

This algorithm requires

$$T(n) = T\left(\left\lceil \frac{n}{2} \right\rceil\right) + T\left(\left\lfloor \frac{n}{2} \right\rfloor\right) + \mathcal{O}(n) \leq 2T\left(\left\lceil \frac{n}{2} \right\rceil\right) + \mathcal{O}(n)$$

comparisons when  $n > 1$  and 0 comparisons when  $n \leq 1$ .



## 6 Recurrences

### Algorithm 2 mergesort(list $L$ )

```
1:  $n \leftarrow \text{size}(L)$ 
2: if  $n \leq 1$  return  $L$ 
3:  $L_1 \leftarrow L[1 \cdots \lfloor \frac{n}{2} \rfloor]$ 
4:  $L_2 \leftarrow L[\lfloor \frac{n}{2} \rfloor + 1 \cdots n]$ 
5: mergesort( $L_1$ )
6: mergesort( $L_2$ )
7:  $L \leftarrow \text{merge}(L_1, L_2)$ 
8: return  $L$ 
```

This algorithm requires

$$T(n) = T\left(\left\lceil \frac{n}{2} \right\rceil\right) + T\left(\left\lfloor \frac{n}{2} \right\rfloor\right) + \mathcal{O}(n) \leq 2T\left(\left\lceil \frac{n}{2} \right\rceil\right) + \mathcal{O}(n)$$

comparisons when  $n > 1$  and 0 comparisons when  $n \leq 1$ .

# Recurrences

How do we bring the expression for the number of comparisons ( $\approx$  running time) into a **closed form**?

For this we need to **solve** the recurrence.

# Recurrences

How do we bring the expression for the number of comparisons ( $\approx$  running time) into a **closed form**?

For this we need to **solve** the recurrence.

# Methods for Solving Recurrences

## 1. Guessing+Induction

Guess the right solution and prove that it is correct via induction. It needs experience to make the right guess.

## 2. Master Theorem

For a lot of recurrences that appear in the analysis of algorithms this theorem can be used to obtain tight asymptotic bounds. It does not provide exact solutions.

## 3. Characteristic Polynomial

Linear homogenous recurrences can be solved via this method.

## 4. Generating Functions

A more general technique that allows to solve certain types of linear inhomogenous relations and also sometimes non-linear recurrence relations.

## 5. Transformation of the Recurrence

Sometimes one can transform the given recurrence relations so that it e.g. becomes linear and can therefore be solved with one of the other techniques.

## 6.1 Guessing+Induction

First we need to get rid of the  $\mathcal{O}$ -notation in our recurrence:

$$T(n) \leq \begin{cases} 2T(\lceil \frac{n}{2} \rceil) + cn & n \geq 2 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

Assume that instead we had

$$T(n) \leq \begin{cases} 2T(\frac{n}{2}) + cn & n \geq 2 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

One way of solving such a recurrence is to **guess** a solution, and check that it is correct by plugging it in.

## 6.1 Guessing+Induction

First we need to get rid of the  $\mathcal{O}$ -notation in our recurrence:

$$T(n) \leq \begin{cases} 2T(\lceil \frac{n}{2} \rceil) + cn & n \geq 2 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

Assume that instead we had

$$T(n) \leq \begin{cases} 2T(\frac{n}{2}) + cn & n \geq 2 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

One way of solving such a recurrence is to **guess** a solution, and check that it is correct by plugging it in.

## 6.1 Guessing+Induction

First we need to get rid of the  $\mathcal{O}$ -notation in our recurrence:

$$T(n) \leq \begin{cases} 2T(\lceil \frac{n}{2} \rceil) + cn & n \geq 2 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

Assume that instead we had

$$T(n) \leq \begin{cases} 2T(\frac{n}{2}) + cn & n \geq 2 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

One way of solving such a recurrence is to **guess** a solution, and check that it is correct by plugging it in.



## 6.1 Guessing+Induction

Suppose we guess  $T(n) \leq dn \log n$  for a constant  $d$ .

## 6.1 Guessing+Induction

Suppose we guess  $T(n) \leq dn \log n$  for a constant  $d$ . Then

$$T(n) \leq 2T\left(\frac{n}{2}\right) + cn$$

## 6.1 Guessing+Induction

Suppose we guess  $T(n) \leq dn \log n$  for a constant  $d$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned}T(n) &\leq 2T\left(\frac{n}{2}\right) + cn \\ &\leq 2\left(d\frac{n}{2}\log\frac{n}{2}\right) + cn\end{aligned}$$

## 6.1 Guessing+Induction

Suppose we guess  $T(n) \leq dn \log n$  for a constant  $d$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned}T(n) &\leq 2T\left(\frac{n}{2}\right) + cn \\&\leq 2\left(d\frac{n}{2}\log\frac{n}{2}\right) + cn \\&= dn(\log n - 1) + cn\end{aligned}$$

## 6.1 Guessing+Induction

Suppose we guess  $T(n) \leq dn \log n$  for a constant  $d$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned}T(n) &\leq 2T\left(\frac{n}{2}\right) + cn \\&\leq 2\left(d\frac{n}{2}\log\frac{n}{2}\right) + cn \\&= dn(\log n - 1) + cn \\&= dn \log n + (c - d)n\end{aligned}$$

## 6.1 Guessing+Induction

Suppose we guess  $T(n) \leq dn \log n$  for a constant  $d$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned}T(n) &\leq 2T\left(\frac{n}{2}\right) + cn \\&\leq 2\left(d\frac{n}{2}\log\frac{n}{2}\right) + cn \\&= dn(\log n - 1) + cn \\&= dn \log n + (c - d)n \\&\leq dn \log n\end{aligned}$$

if we choose  $d \geq c$ .

## 6.1 Guessing+Induction

Suppose we guess  $T(n) \leq dn \log n$  for a constant  $d$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned}T(n) &\leq 2T\left(\frac{n}{2}\right) + cn \\&\leq 2\left(d\frac{n}{2}\log\frac{n}{2}\right) + cn \\&= dn(\log n - 1) + cn \\&= dn \log n + (c - d)n \\&\leq dn \log n\end{aligned}$$

if we choose  $d \geq c$ .

Formally one would make an induction proof, where the above is the induction step. The base case is usually trivial.

## 6.1 Guessing+Induction

$$T(n) \leq \begin{cases} 2T(\frac{n}{2}) + cn & n \geq 16 \\ b & \text{otw.} \end{cases}$$



## 6.1 Guessing+Induction

**Guess:**  $T(n) \leq dn \log n$ .

$$T(n) \leq \begin{cases} 2T(\frac{n}{2}) + cn & n \geq 16 \\ b & \text{otw.} \end{cases}$$

## 6.1 Guessing+Induction

**Guess:**  $T(n) \leq dn \log n$ .

**Proof.** (by induction)

$$T(n) \leq \begin{cases} 2T(\frac{n}{2}) + cn & n \geq 16 \\ b & \text{otw.} \end{cases}$$

## 6.1 Guessing+Induction

**Guess:**  $T(n) \leq dn \log n$ .

**Proof.** (by induction)

- ▶ **base case** ( $2 \leq n < 16$ ):

$$T(n) \leq \begin{cases} 2T(\frac{n}{2}) + cn & n \geq 16 \\ b & \text{otw.} \end{cases}$$

## 6.1 Guessing+Induction

**Guess:**  $T(n) \leq dn \log n$ .

**Proof.** (by induction)

- ▶ **base case** ( $2 \leq n < 16$ ): **true** if we choose  $d \geq b$ .

$$T(n) \leq \begin{cases} 2T(\frac{n}{2}) + cn & n \geq 16 \\ b & \text{otw.} \end{cases}$$

## 6.1 Guessing+Induction

**Guess:**  $T(n) \leq dn \log n$ .

**Proof.** (by induction)

- ▶ **base case** ( $2 \leq n < 16$ ): **true** if we choose  $d \geq b$ .
- ▶ **induction step**  $2 \dots n - 1 \rightarrow n$ :

$$T(n) \leq \begin{cases} 2T(\frac{n}{2}) + cn & n \geq 16 \\ b & \text{otw.} \end{cases}$$

## 6.1 Guessing+Induction

$$T(n) \leq \begin{cases} 2T(\frac{n}{2}) + cn & n \geq 16 \\ b & \text{otw.} \end{cases}$$

**Guess:**  $T(n) \leq dn \log n$ .

**Proof.** (by induction)

- ▶ **base case** ( $2 \leq n < 16$ ): **true** if we choose  $d \geq b$ .
- ▶ **induction step**  $2 \dots n - 1 \rightarrow n$ :

Suppose statem. is true for  $n' \in \{2, \dots, n - 1\}$ , and  $n \geq 16$ .

We prove it for  $n$ :

## 6.1 Guessing+Induction

$$T(n) \leq \begin{cases} 2T(\frac{n}{2}) + cn & n \geq 16 \\ b & \text{otw.} \end{cases}$$

**Guess:**  $T(n) \leq dn \log n$ .

**Proof.** (by induction)

- ▶ **base case** ( $2 \leq n < 16$ ): **true** if we choose  $d \geq b$ .
- ▶ **induction step**  $2 \dots n - 1 \rightarrow n$ :

Suppose statem. is true for  $n' \in \{2, \dots, n - 1\}$ , and  $n \geq 16$ .

We prove it for  $n$ :

$$T(n) \leq 2T\left(\frac{n}{2}\right) + cn$$

## 6.1 Guessing+Induction

$$T(n) \leq \begin{cases} 2T(\frac{n}{2}) + cn & n \geq 16 \\ b & \text{otw.} \end{cases}$$

**Guess:**  $T(n) \leq dn \log n$ .

**Proof.** (by induction)

- ▶ **base case** ( $2 \leq n < 16$ ): **true** if we choose  $d \geq b$ .
- ▶ **induction step**  $2 \dots n - 1 \rightarrow n$ :

Suppose statem. is true for  $n' \in \{2, \dots, n - 1\}$ , and  $n \geq 16$ .

We prove it for  $n$ :

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) &\leq 2T\left(\frac{n}{2}\right) + cn \\ &\leq 2\left(d\frac{n}{2} \log \frac{n}{2}\right) + cn \end{aligned}$$



## 6.1 Guessing+Induction

$$T(n) \leq \begin{cases} 2T(\frac{n}{2}) + cn & n \geq 16 \\ b & \text{otw.} \end{cases}$$

**Guess:**  $T(n) \leq dn \log n$ .

**Proof.** (by induction)

- ▶ **base case** ( $2 \leq n < 16$ ): **true** if we choose  $d \geq b$ .
- ▶ **induction step**  $2 \dots n - 1 \rightarrow n$ :

Suppose statem. is true for  $n' \in \{2, \dots, n - 1\}$ , and  $n \geq 16$ .

We prove it for  $n$ :

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) &\leq 2T\left(\frac{n}{2}\right) + cn \\ &\leq 2\left(d\frac{n}{2} \log \frac{n}{2}\right) + cn \\ &= dn(\log n - 1) + cn \end{aligned}$$

## 6.1 Guessing+Induction

$$T(n) \leq \begin{cases} 2T(\frac{n}{2}) + cn & n \geq 16 \\ b & \text{otw.} \end{cases}$$

**Guess:**  $T(n) \leq dn \log n$ .

**Proof.** (by induction)

- ▶ **base case** ( $2 \leq n < 16$ ): **true** if we choose  $d \geq b$ .
- ▶ **induction step**  $2 \dots n - 1 \rightarrow n$ :

Suppose statem. is true for  $n' \in \{2, \dots, n - 1\}$ , and  $n \geq 16$ .

We prove it for  $n$ :

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) &\leq 2T\left(\frac{n}{2}\right) + cn \\ &\leq 2\left(d\frac{n}{2} \log \frac{n}{2}\right) + cn \\ &= dn(\log n - 1) + cn \\ &= dn \log n + (c - d)n \end{aligned}$$

## 6.1 Guessing+Induction

$$T(n) \leq \begin{cases} 2T(\frac{n}{2}) + cn & n \geq 16 \\ b & \text{otw.} \end{cases}$$

**Guess:**  $T(n) \leq dn \log n$ .

**Proof.** (by induction)

- ▶ **base case** ( $2 \leq n < 16$ ): **true** if we choose  $d \geq b$ .
- ▶ **induction step**  $2 \dots n - 1 \rightarrow n$ :

Suppose statem. is true for  $n' \in \{2, \dots, n - 1\}$ , and  $n \geq 16$ .

We prove it for  $n$ :

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) &\leq 2T\left(\frac{n}{2}\right) + cn \\ &\leq 2\left(d\frac{n}{2} \log \frac{n}{2}\right) + cn \\ &= dn(\log n - 1) + cn \\ &= dn \log n + (c - d)n \\ &\leq dn \log n \end{aligned}$$

## 6.1 Guessing+Induction

$$T(n) \leq \begin{cases} 2T(\frac{n}{2}) + cn & n \geq 16 \\ b & \text{otw.} \end{cases}$$

**Guess:**  $T(n) \leq dn \log n$ .

**Proof.** (by induction)

- ▶ **base case** ( $2 \leq n < 16$ ): **true** if we choose  $d \geq b$ .
- ▶ **induction step**  $2 \dots n - 1 \rightarrow n$ :

Suppose statem. is true for  $n' \in \{2, \dots, n - 1\}$ , and  $n \geq 16$ .

We prove it for  $n$ :

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) &\leq 2T\left(\frac{n}{2}\right) + cn \\ &\leq 2\left(d\frac{n}{2} \log \frac{n}{2}\right) + cn \\ &= dn(\log n - 1) + cn \\ &= dn \log n + (c - d)n \\ &\leq dn \log n \end{aligned}$$

Hence, statement is **true** if we choose  $d \geq c$ .

## 6.1 Guessing+Induction

Why did we change the recurrence by getting rid of the ceiling?

## 6.1 Guessing+Induction

Why did we change the recurrence by getting rid of the ceiling?

If we do not do this we instead consider the following recurrence:

$$T(n) \leq \begin{cases} 2T(\lceil \frac{n}{2} \rceil) + cn & n \geq 16 \\ b & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

## 6.1 Guessing+Induction

Why did we change the recurrence by getting rid of the ceiling?

If we do not do this we instead consider the following recurrence:

$$T(n) \leq \begin{cases} 2T(\lceil \frac{n}{2} \rceil) + cn & n \geq 16 \\ b & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

Note that we can do this as for constant-sized inputs the running time is always some constant ( $b$  in the above case).

## 6.1 Guessing+Induction

We also make a guess of  $T(n) \leq dn \log n$  and get

$$T(n)$$



## 6.1 Guessing+Induction

We also make a guess of  $T(n) \leq dn \log n$  and get

$$T(n) \leq 2T\left(\left\lceil \frac{n}{2} \right\rceil\right) + cn$$

## 6.1 Guessing+Induction

We also make a guess of  $T(n) \leq dn \log n$  and get

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) &\leq 2T\left(\left\lceil \frac{n}{2} \right\rceil\right) + cn \\ &\leq 2\left(d\left\lceil \frac{n}{2} \right\rceil \log \left\lceil \frac{n}{2} \right\rceil\right) + cn \end{aligned}$$

## 6.1 Guessing+Induction

We also make a guess of  $T(n) \leq dn \log n$  and get

$$\begin{aligned}T(n) &\leq 2T\left(\left\lceil \frac{n}{2} \right\rceil\right) + cn \\ &\leq 2\left(d\left\lceil \frac{n}{2} \right\rceil \log \left\lceil \frac{n}{2} \right\rceil\right) + cn\end{aligned}$$

$$\left\lceil \frac{n}{2} \right\rceil \leq \frac{n}{2} + 1$$

## 6.1 Guessing+Induction

We also make a guess of  $T(n) \leq dn \log n$  and get

$$\begin{aligned}T(n) &\leq 2T\left(\left\lceil \frac{n}{2} \right\rceil\right) + cn \\ &\leq 2\left(d\left\lceil \frac{n}{2} \right\rceil \log \left\lceil \frac{n}{2} \right\rceil\right) + cn\end{aligned}$$

$$\boxed{\left\lceil \frac{n}{2} \right\rceil \leq \frac{n}{2} + 1} \leq 2(d(n/2 + 1) \log(n/2 + 1)) + cn$$

## 6.1 Guessing+Induction

We also make a guess of  $T(n) \leq dn \log n$  and get

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) &\leq 2T\left(\left\lceil \frac{n}{2} \right\rceil\right) + cn \\ &\leq 2\left(d\left\lceil \frac{n}{2} \right\rceil \log \left\lceil \frac{n}{2} \right\rceil\right) + cn \\ &\leq 2\left(d\left(\frac{n}{2} + 1\right) \log\left(\frac{n}{2} + 1\right)\right) + cn \end{aligned}$$

$$\left\lceil \frac{n}{2} \right\rceil \leq \frac{n}{2} + 1$$

$$\frac{n}{2} + 1 \leq \frac{9}{16}n$$

## 6.1 Guessing+Induction

We also make a guess of  $T(n) \leq dn \log n$  and get

$$T(n) \leq 2T\left(\left\lceil \frac{n}{2} \right\rceil\right) + cn$$

$$\leq 2\left(d\left\lceil \frac{n}{2} \right\rceil \log \left\lceil \frac{n}{2} \right\rceil\right) + cn$$

$$\boxed{\left\lceil \frac{n}{2} \right\rceil \leq \frac{n}{2} + 1} \leq 2\left(d\left(\frac{n}{2} + 1\right) \log\left(\frac{n}{2} + 1\right)\right) + cn$$

$$\boxed{\frac{n}{2} + 1 \leq \frac{9}{16}n} \leq dn \log\left(\frac{9}{16}n\right) + 2d \log n + cn$$

## 6.1 Guessing+Induction

We also make a guess of  $T(n) \leq dn \log n$  and get

$$T(n) \leq 2T\left(\left\lceil \frac{n}{2} \right\rceil\right) + cn$$

$$\leq 2\left(d\left\lceil \frac{n}{2} \right\rceil \log \left\lceil \frac{n}{2} \right\rceil\right) + cn$$

$$\boxed{\left\lceil \frac{n}{2} \right\rceil \leq \frac{n}{2} + 1} \leq 2\left(d\left(\frac{n}{2} + 1\right) \log\left(\frac{n}{2} + 1\right)\right) + cn$$

$$\boxed{\frac{n}{2} + 1 \leq \frac{9}{16}n} \leq dn \log\left(\frac{9}{16}n\right) + 2d \log n + cn$$

$$\boxed{\log \frac{9}{16}n = \log n + (\log 9 - 4)}$$

## 6.1 Guessing+Induction

We also make a guess of  $T(n) \leq dn \log n$  and get

$$T(n) \leq 2T\left(\left\lceil \frac{n}{2} \right\rceil\right) + cn$$

$$\leq 2\left(d\left\lceil \frac{n}{2} \right\rceil \log \left\lceil \frac{n}{2} \right\rceil\right) + cn$$

$$\boxed{\left\lceil \frac{n}{2} \right\rceil \leq \frac{n}{2} + 1} \leq 2\left(d\left(\frac{n}{2} + 1\right) \log\left(\frac{n}{2} + 1\right)\right) + cn$$

$$\boxed{\frac{n}{2} + 1 \leq \frac{9}{16}n} \leq dn \log\left(\frac{9}{16}n\right) + 2d \log n + cn$$

$$\boxed{\log \frac{9}{16}n = \log n + (\log 9 - 4)} = dn \log n + (\log 9 - 4)dn + 2d \log n + cn$$



## 6.1 Guessing+Induction

We also make a guess of  $T(n) \leq dn \log n$  and get

$$T(n) \leq 2T\left(\left\lceil \frac{n}{2} \right\rceil\right) + cn$$

$$\leq 2\left(d\left\lceil \frac{n}{2} \right\rceil \log \left\lceil \frac{n}{2} \right\rceil\right) + cn$$

$$\left\lceil \frac{n}{2} \right\rceil \leq \frac{n}{2} + 1$$

$$\leq 2\left(d\left(\frac{n}{2} + 1\right) \log\left(\frac{n}{2} + 1\right)\right) + cn$$

$$\frac{n}{2} + 1 \leq \frac{9}{16}n$$

$$\leq dn \log\left(\frac{9}{16}n\right) + 2d \log n + cn$$

$$\log \frac{9}{16}n = \log n + (\log 9 - 4)$$

$$= dn \log n + (\log 9 - 4)dn + 2d \log n + cn$$

$$\log n \leq \frac{n}{4}$$

## 6.1 Guessing+Induction

We also make a guess of  $T(n) \leq dn \log n$  and get

$$T(n) \leq 2T\left(\left\lceil \frac{n}{2} \right\rceil\right) + cn$$

$$\leq 2\left(d\left\lceil \frac{n}{2} \right\rceil \log \left\lceil \frac{n}{2} \right\rceil\right) + cn$$

$$\left\lceil \frac{n}{2} \right\rceil \leq \frac{n}{2} + 1$$

$$\leq 2\left(d\left(\frac{n}{2} + 1\right) \log\left(\frac{n}{2} + 1\right)\right) + cn$$

$$\frac{n}{2} + 1 \leq \frac{9}{16}n$$

$$\leq dn \log\left(\frac{9}{16}n\right) + 2d \log n + cn$$

$$\log \frac{9}{16}n = \log n + (\log 9 - 4)$$

$$= dn \log n + (\log 9 - 4)dn + 2d \log n + cn$$

$$\log n \leq \frac{n}{4}$$

$$\leq dn \log n + (\log 9 - 3.5)dn + cn$$

## 6.1 Guessing+Induction

We also make a guess of  $T(n) \leq dn \log n$  and get

$$T(n) \leq 2T\left(\left\lceil \frac{n}{2} \right\rceil\right) + cn$$

$$\leq 2\left(d\left\lceil \frac{n}{2} \right\rceil \log \left\lceil \frac{n}{2} \right\rceil\right) + cn$$

$$\left\lceil \frac{n}{2} \right\rceil \leq \frac{n}{2} + 1$$

$$\leq 2\left(d\left(\frac{n}{2} + 1\right) \log\left(\frac{n}{2} + 1\right)\right) + cn$$

$$\frac{n}{2} + 1 \leq \frac{9}{16}n$$

$$\leq dn \log\left(\frac{9}{16}n\right) + 2d \log n + cn$$

$$\log \frac{9}{16}n = \log n + (\log 9 - 4)$$

$$= dn \log n + (\log 9 - 4)dn + 2d \log n + cn$$

$$\log n \leq \frac{n}{4}$$

$$\leq dn \log n + (\log 9 - 3.5)dn + cn$$

$$\leq dn \log n - 0.33dn + cn$$

## 6.1 Guessing+Induction

We also make a guess of  $T(n) \leq dn \log n$  and get

$$T(n) \leq 2T\left(\left\lceil \frac{n}{2} \right\rceil\right) + cn$$

$$\leq 2\left(d\left\lceil \frac{n}{2} \right\rceil \log \left\lceil \frac{n}{2} \right\rceil\right) + cn$$

$$\left\lceil \frac{n}{2} \right\rceil \leq \frac{n}{2} + 1$$

$$\leq 2\left(d\left(\frac{n}{2} + 1\right) \log\left(\frac{n}{2} + 1\right)\right) + cn$$

$$\frac{n}{2} + 1 \leq \frac{9}{16}n$$

$$\leq dn \log\left(\frac{9}{16}n\right) + 2d \log n + cn$$

$$\log \frac{9}{16}n = \log n + (\log 9 - 4)$$

$$= dn \log n + (\log 9 - 4)dn + 2d \log n + cn$$

$$\log n \leq \frac{n}{4}$$

$$\leq dn \log n + (\log 9 - 3.5)dn + cn$$

$$\leq dn \log n - 0.33dn + cn$$

$$\leq dn \log n$$

for a suitable choice of  $d$ .

## 6.2 Master Theorem

### Lemma 4

Let  $a \geq 1$ ,  $b \geq 1$  and  $\epsilon > 0$  denote constants. Consider the recurrence

$$T(n) = aT\left(\frac{n}{b}\right) + f(n) .$$

#### Case 1.

If  $f(n) = \mathcal{O}(n^{\log_b(a)-\epsilon})$  then  $T(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b a})$ .

#### Case 2.

If  $f(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b(a)} \log^k n)$  then  $T(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b a} \log^{k+1} n)$ .

#### Case 3.

If  $f(n) = \Omega(n^{\log_b(a)+\epsilon})$  and for sufficiently large  $n$   
 $af\left(\frac{n}{b}\right) \leq cf(n)$  for some constant  $c < 1$  then  $T(n) = \Theta(f(n))$ .

## 6.2 Master Theorem

We prove the Master Theorem for the case that  $n$  is of the form  $b^\ell$ , and we assume that the non-recursive case occurs for problem size 1 and incurs cost 1.

# The Recursion Tree

The running time of a recursive algorithm can be visualized by a recursion tree:

# The Recursion Tree

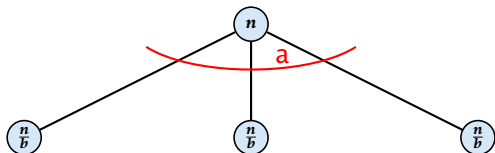
The running time of a recursive algorithm can be visualized by a recursion tree:





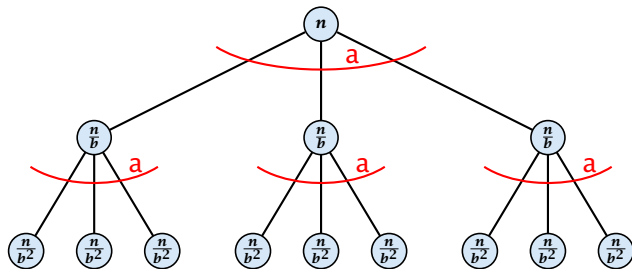
# The Recursion Tree

The running time of a recursive algorithm can be visualized by a recursion tree:



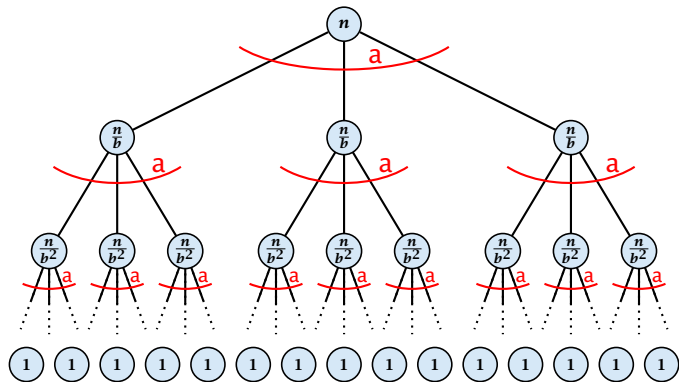
# The Recursion Tree

The running time of a recursive algorithm can be visualized by a recursion tree:



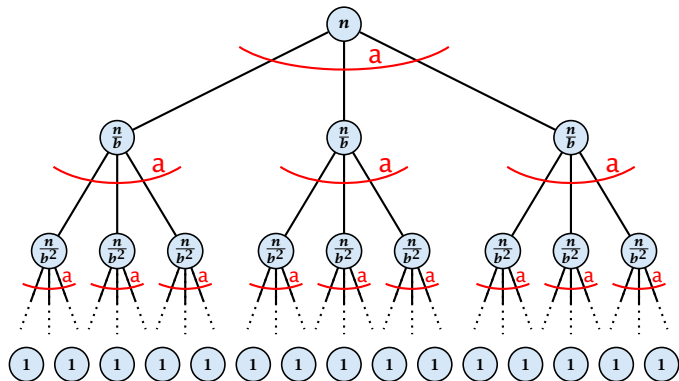
# The Recursion Tree

The running time of a recursive algorithm can be visualized by a recursion tree:



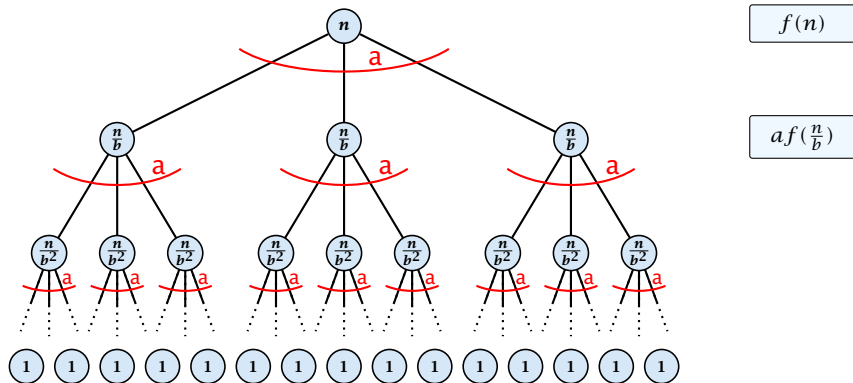
# The Recursion Tree

The running time of a recursive algorithm can be visualized by a recursion tree:



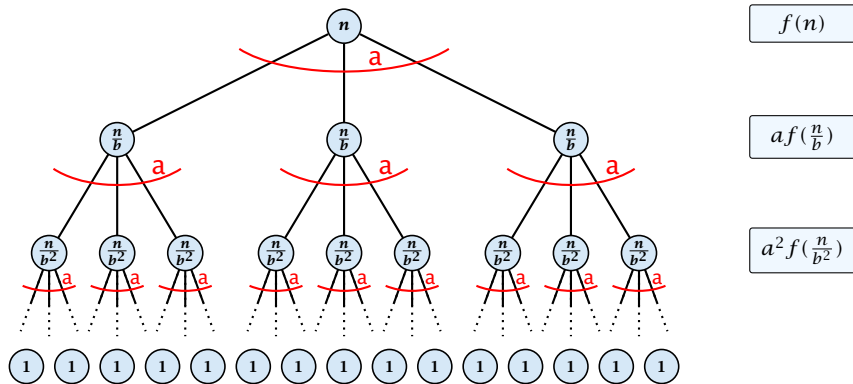
# The Recursion Tree

The running time of a recursive algorithm can be visualized by a recursion tree:



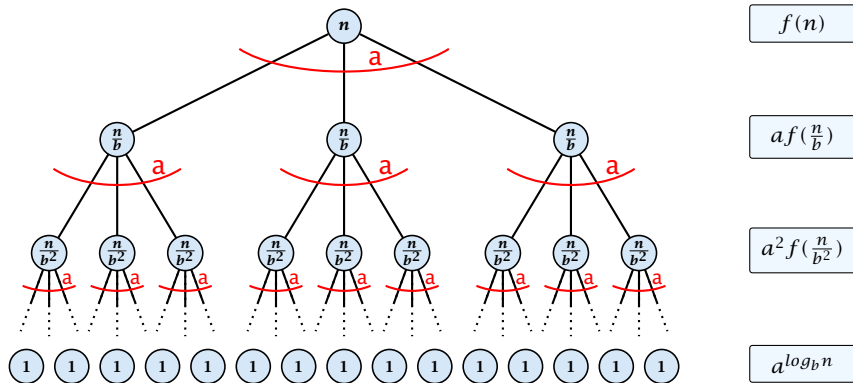
# The Recursion Tree

The running time of a recursive algorithm can be visualized by a recursion tree:



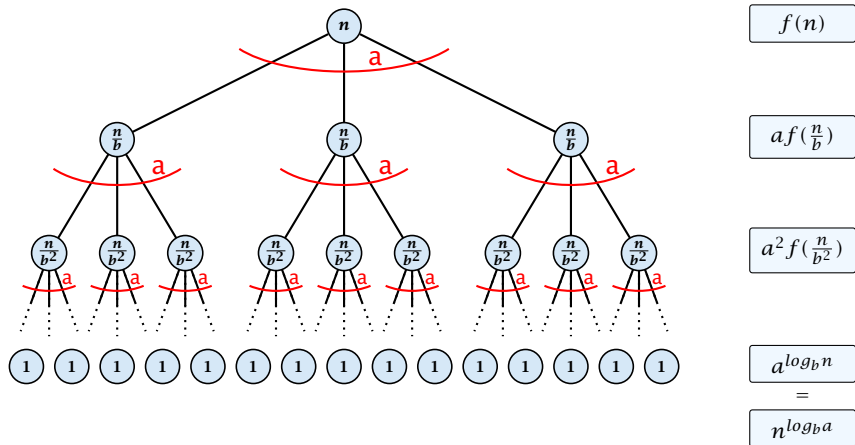
# The Recursion Tree

The running time of a recursive algorithm can be visualized by a recursion tree:



# The Recursion Tree

The running time of a recursive algorithm can be visualized by a recursion tree:





## 6.2 Master Theorem

This gives

$$T(n) = n^{\log_b a} + \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i f\left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right).$$

Case 1. Now suppose that  $f(n) \leq cn^{\log_b a - \epsilon}$ .

Case 1. Now suppose that  $f(n) \leq cn^{\log_b a - \epsilon}$ .

$$T(n) = n^{\log_b a}$$

Case 1. Now suppose that  $f(n) \leq cn^{\log_b a - \epsilon}$ .

$$T(n) - n^{\log_b a} = \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i f\left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right)$$

Case 1. Now suppose that  $f(n) \leq cn^{\log_b a - \epsilon}$ .

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) - n^{\log_b a} &= \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i f\left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right) \\ &\leq c \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i \left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right)^{\log_b a - \epsilon} \end{aligned}$$

Case 1. Now suppose that  $f(n) \leq cn^{\log_b a - \epsilon}$ .

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) - n^{\log_b a} &= \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i f\left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right) \\ &\leq c \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i \left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right)^{\log_b a - \epsilon} \end{aligned}$$

$$b^{-i(\log_b a - \epsilon)} = b^{\epsilon i} (b^{\log_b a})^{-i} = b^{\epsilon i} a^{-i}$$

Case 1. Now suppose that  $f(n) \leq cn^{\log_b a - \epsilon}$ .

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) - n^{\log_b a} &= \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i f\left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right) \\ &\leq c \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i \left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right)^{\log_b a - \epsilon} \end{aligned}$$

$$\boxed{b^{-i(\log_b a - \epsilon)} = b^{\epsilon i} (b^{\log_b a})^{-i} = b^{\epsilon i} a^{-i}} = cn^{\log_b a - \epsilon} \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} (b^{\epsilon})^i$$

Case 1. Now suppose that  $f(n) \leq cn^{\log_b a - \epsilon}$ .

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) - n^{\log_b a} &= \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i f\left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right) \\ &\leq c \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i \left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right)^{\log_b a - \epsilon} \end{aligned}$$

$$\boxed{b^{-i(\log_b a - \epsilon)} = b^{\epsilon i} (b^{\log_b a})^{-i} = b^{\epsilon i} a^{-i}} = cn^{\log_b a - \epsilon} \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} (b^{\epsilon})^i$$

$$\boxed{\sum_{i=0}^k q^i = \frac{q^{k+1} - 1}{q - 1}}$$



Case 1. Now suppose that  $f(n) \leq cn^{\log_b a - \epsilon}$ .

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) - n^{\log_b a} &= \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i f\left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right) \\ &\leq c \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i \left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right)^{\log_b a - \epsilon} \end{aligned}$$

$$\boxed{b^{-i(\log_b a - \epsilon)} = b^{\epsilon i} (b^{\log_b a})^{-i} = b^{\epsilon i} a^{-i}} = cn^{\log_b a - \epsilon} \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} (b^{\epsilon})^i$$

$$\boxed{\sum_{i=0}^k q^i = \frac{q^{k+1} - 1}{q - 1}} = cn^{\log_b a - \epsilon} (b^{\epsilon \log_b n} - 1) / (b^{\epsilon} - 1)$$

Case 1. Now suppose that  $f(n) \leq cn^{\log_b a - \epsilon}$ .

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) - n^{\log_b a} &= \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i f\left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right) \\ &\leq c \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i \left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right)^{\log_b a - \epsilon} \end{aligned}$$

$$\boxed{b^{-i(\log_b a - \epsilon)} = b^{\epsilon i} (b^{\log_b a})^{-i} = b^{\epsilon i} a^{-i}} = cn^{\log_b a - \epsilon} \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} (b^{\epsilon})^i$$

$$\begin{aligned} \boxed{\sum_{i=0}^k q^i = \frac{q^{k+1} - 1}{q - 1}} &= cn^{\log_b a - \epsilon} (b^{\epsilon \log_b n} - 1) / (b^{\epsilon} - 1) \\ &= cn^{\log_b a - \epsilon} (n^{\epsilon} - 1) / (b^{\epsilon} - 1) \end{aligned}$$

Case 1. Now suppose that  $f(n) \leq cn^{\log_b a - \epsilon}$ .

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) - n^{\log_b a} &= \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i f\left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right) \\ &\leq c \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i \left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right)^{\log_b a - \epsilon} \end{aligned}$$

$$\boxed{b^{-i(\log_b a - \epsilon)} = b^{\epsilon i} (b^{\log_b a})^{-i} = b^{\epsilon i} a^{-i}} = cn^{\log_b a - \epsilon} \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} (b^{\epsilon})^i$$

$$\begin{aligned} \boxed{\sum_{i=0}^k q^i = \frac{q^{k+1} - 1}{q - 1}} &= cn^{\log_b a - \epsilon} (b^{\epsilon \log_b n} - 1) / (b^{\epsilon} - 1) \\ &= cn^{\log_b a - \epsilon} (n^{\epsilon} - 1) / (b^{\epsilon} - 1) \\ &= \frac{c}{b^{\epsilon} - 1} n^{\log_b a} (n^{\epsilon} - 1) / (n^{\epsilon}) \end{aligned}$$

Case 1. Now suppose that  $f(n) \leq cn^{\log_b a - \epsilon}$ .

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) - n^{\log_b a} &= \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i f\left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right) \\ &\leq c \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i \left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right)^{\log_b a - \epsilon} \end{aligned}$$

$$\boxed{b^{-i(\log_b a - \epsilon)} = b^{\epsilon i} (b^{\log_b a})^{-i} = b^{\epsilon i} a^{-i}} = cn^{\log_b a - \epsilon} \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} (b^{\epsilon})^i$$

$$\begin{aligned} \boxed{\sum_{i=0}^k q^i = \frac{q^{k+1} - 1}{q - 1}} &= cn^{\log_b a - \epsilon} (b^{\epsilon \log_b n} - 1) / (b^{\epsilon} - 1) \\ &= cn^{\log_b a - \epsilon} (n^{\epsilon} - 1) / (b^{\epsilon} - 1) \\ &= \frac{c}{b^{\epsilon} - 1} n^{\log_b a} (n^{\epsilon} - 1) / (n^{\epsilon}) \end{aligned}$$

Hence,

$$T(n) \leq \left(\frac{c}{b^{\epsilon} - 1}\right) n^{\log_b(a)}$$

Case 1. Now suppose that  $f(n) \leq cn^{\log_b a - \epsilon}$ .

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) - n^{\log_b a} &= \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i f\left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right) \\ &\leq c \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i \left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right)^{\log_b a - \epsilon} \end{aligned}$$

$$\boxed{b^{-i(\log_b a - \epsilon)} = b^{\epsilon i} (b^{\log_b a})^{-i} = b^{\epsilon i} a^{-i}} = cn^{\log_b a - \epsilon} \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} (b^{\epsilon})^i$$

$$\begin{aligned} \boxed{\sum_{i=0}^k q^i = \frac{q^{k+1} - 1}{q - 1}} &= cn^{\log_b a - \epsilon} (b^{\epsilon \log_b n} - 1) / (b^{\epsilon} - 1) \\ &= cn^{\log_b a - \epsilon} (n^{\epsilon} - 1) / (b^{\epsilon} - 1) \\ &= \frac{c}{b^{\epsilon} - 1} n^{\log_b a} (n^{\epsilon} - 1) / (n^{\epsilon}) \end{aligned}$$

Hence,

$$T(n) \leq \left(\frac{c}{b^{\epsilon} - 1}\right) n^{\log_b(a)} \quad \Rightarrow T(n) = \mathcal{O}(n^{\log_b a}).$$

Case 2. Now suppose that  $f(n) \leq cn^{\log_b a}$ .

Case 2. Now suppose that  $f(n) \leq cn^{\log_b a}$ .

$$T(n) = n^{\log_b a}$$

Case 2. Now suppose that  $f(n) \leq cn^{\log_b a}$ .

$$T(n) - n^{\log_b a} = \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i f\left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right)$$



Case 2. Now suppose that  $f(n) \leq cn^{\log_b a}$ .

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) - n^{\log_b a} &= \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i f\left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right) \\ &\leq c \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i \left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right)^{\log_b a} \end{aligned}$$

Case 2. Now suppose that  $f(n) \leq cn^{\log_b a}$ .

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) - n^{\log_b a} &= \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i f\left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right) \\ &\leq c \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i \left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right)^{\log_b a} \\ &= cn^{\log_b a} \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} 1 \end{aligned}$$

Case 2. Now suppose that  $f(n) \leq cn^{\log_b a}$ .

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) - n^{\log_b a} &= \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i f\left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right) \\ &\leq c \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i \left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right)^{\log_b a} \\ &= cn^{\log_b a} \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} 1 \\ &= cn^{\log_b a} \log_b n \end{aligned}$$

Case 2. Now suppose that  $f(n) \leq cn^{\log_b a}$ .

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) - n^{\log_b a} &= \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i f\left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right) \\ &\leq c \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i \left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right)^{\log_b a} \\ &= cn^{\log_b a} \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} 1 \\ &= cn^{\log_b a} \log_b n \end{aligned}$$

Hence,

$$T(n) = \mathcal{O}(n^{\log_b a} \log_b n)$$

Case 2. Now suppose that  $f(n) \leq cn^{\log_b a}$ .

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) - n^{\log_b a} &= \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i f\left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right) \\ &\leq c \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i \left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right)^{\log_b a} \\ &= cn^{\log_b a} \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} 1 \\ &= cn^{\log_b a} \log_b n \end{aligned}$$

Hence,

$$T(n) = \mathcal{O}(n^{\log_b a} \log_b n) \quad \Rightarrow T(n) = \mathcal{O}(n^{\log_b a} \log n).$$

Case 2. Now suppose that  $f(n) \geq cn^{\log_b a}$ .

Case 2. Now suppose that  $f(n) \geq cn^{\log_b a}$ .

$$T(n) = n^{\log_b a}$$

Case 2. Now suppose that  $f(n) \geq cn^{\log_b a}$ .

$$T(n) - n^{\log_b a} = \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i f\left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right)$$



Case 2. Now suppose that  $f(n) \geq cn^{\log_b a}$ .

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) - n^{\log_b a} &= \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i f\left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right) \\ &\geq c \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i \left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right)^{\log_b a} \end{aligned}$$

Case 2. Now suppose that  $f(n) \geq cn^{\log_b a}$ .

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) - n^{\log_b a} &= \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i f\left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right) \\ &\geq c \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i \left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right)^{\log_b a} \\ &= cn^{\log_b a} \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} 1 \end{aligned}$$

Case 2. Now suppose that  $f(n) \geq cn^{\log_b a}$ .

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) - n^{\log_b a} &= \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i f\left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right) \\ &\geq c \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i \left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right)^{\log_b a} \\ &= cn^{\log_b a} \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} 1 \\ &= cn^{\log_b a} \log_b n \end{aligned}$$

Case 2. Now suppose that  $f(n) \geq cn^{\log_b a}$ .

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) - n^{\log_b a} &= \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i f\left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right) \\ &\geq c \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i \left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right)^{\log_b a} \\ &= cn^{\log_b a} \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} 1 \\ &= cn^{\log_b a} \log_b n \end{aligned}$$

Hence,

$$T(n) = \Omega(n^{\log_b a} \log_b n)$$

Case 2. Now suppose that  $f(n) \geq cn^{\log_b a}$ .

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) - n^{\log_b a} &= \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i f\left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right) \\ &\geq c \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i \left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right)^{\log_b a} \\ &= cn^{\log_b a} \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} 1 \\ &= cn^{\log_b a} \log_b n \end{aligned}$$

Hence,

$$T(n) = \Omega(n^{\log_b a} \log_b n) \quad \Rightarrow T(n) = \Omega(n^{\log_b a} \log n).$$

Case 2. Now suppose that  $f(n) \leq cn^{\log_b a} (\log_b(n))^k$ .

Case 2. Now suppose that  $f(n) \leq cn^{\log_b a} (\log_b(n))^k$ .

$$T(n) = n^{\log_b a}$$

Case 2. Now suppose that  $f(n) \leq cn^{\log_b a} (\log_b(n))^k$ .

$$T(n) - n^{\log_b a} = \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i f\left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right)$$



Case 2. Now suppose that  $f(n) \leq cn^{\log_b a} (\log_b(n))^k$ .

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) - n^{\log_b a} &= \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i f\left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right) \\ &\leq c \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i \left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right)^{\log_b a} \cdot \left(\log_b\left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right)\right)^k \end{aligned}$$

Case 2. Now suppose that  $f(n) \leq cn^{\log_b a} (\log_b(n))^k$ .

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) - n^{\log_b a} &= \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i f\left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right) \\ &\leq c \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i \left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right)^{\log_b a} \cdot \left(\log_b\left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right)\right)^k \end{aligned}$$

$$n = b^\ell \Rightarrow \ell = \log_b n$$

Case 2. Now suppose that  $f(n) \leq cn^{\log_b a} (\log_b(n))^k$ .

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) - n^{\log_b a} &= \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i f\left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right) \\ &\leq c \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i \left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right)^{\log_b a} \cdot \left(\log_b\left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right)\right)^k \end{aligned}$$

$$\boxed{n = b^\ell \Rightarrow \ell = \log_b n} = cn^{\log_b a} \sum_{i=0}^{\ell-1} \left(\log_b\left(\frac{b^\ell}{b^i}\right)\right)^k$$

Case 2. Now suppose that  $f(n) \leq cn^{\log_b a} (\log_b(n))^k$ .

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) - n^{\log_b a} &= \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i f\left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right) \\ &\leq c \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i \left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right)^{\log_b a} \cdot \left(\log_b\left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right)\right)^k \end{aligned}$$

$n = b^\ell \Rightarrow \ell = \log_b n$
--

$$\begin{aligned} &= cn^{\log_b a} \sum_{i=0}^{\ell-1} \left(\log_b\left(\frac{b^\ell}{b^i}\right)\right)^k \\ &= cn^{\log_b a} \sum_{i=0}^{\ell-1} (\ell - i)^k \end{aligned}$$

Case 2. Now suppose that  $f(n) \leq cn^{\log_b a} (\log_b(n))^k$ .

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) - n^{\log_b a} &= \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i f\left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right) \\ &\leq c \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i \left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right)^{\log_b a} \cdot \left(\log_b\left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right)\right)^k \end{aligned}$$

$n = b^\ell \Rightarrow \ell = \log_b n$
--

$$\begin{aligned} &= cn^{\log_b a} \sum_{i=0}^{\ell-1} \left(\log_b\left(\frac{b^\ell}{b^i}\right)\right)^k \\ &= cn^{\log_b a} \sum_{i=0}^{\ell-1} (\ell - i)^k \\ &= cn^{\log_b a} \sum_{i=1}^{\ell} i^k \end{aligned}$$

Case 2. Now suppose that  $f(n) \leq cn^{\log_b a} (\log_b(n))^k$ .

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) - n^{\log_b a} &= \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i f\left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right) \\ &\leq c \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i \left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right)^{\log_b a} \cdot \left(\log_b\left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right)\right)^k \end{aligned}$$

$$n = b^\ell \Rightarrow \ell = \log_b n$$

$$\begin{aligned} &= cn^{\log_b a} \sum_{i=0}^{\ell-1} \left(\log_b\left(\frac{b^\ell}{b^i}\right)\right)^k \\ &= cn^{\log_b a} \sum_{i=0}^{\ell-1} (\ell - i)^k \\ &= cn^{\log_b a} \sum_{i=1}^{\ell} i^k \approx \frac{1}{k} \ell^{k+1} \end{aligned}$$

Case 2. Now suppose that  $f(n) \leq cn^{\log_b a} (\log_b(n))^k$ .

$$T(n) - n^{\log_b a} = \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i f\left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right) \\ \leq c \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i \left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right)^{\log_b a} \cdot \left(\log_b\left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right)\right)^k$$

$$n = b^\ell \Rightarrow \ell = \log_b n$$

$$= cn^{\log_b a} \sum_{i=0}^{\ell-1} \left(\log_b\left(\frac{b^\ell}{b^i}\right)\right)^k \\ = cn^{\log_b a} \sum_{i=0}^{\ell-1} (\ell - i)^k \\ = cn^{\log_b a} \sum_{i=1}^{\ell} i^k \\ \approx \frac{c}{k} n^{\log_b a} \ell^{k+1}$$

Case 2. Now suppose that  $f(n) \leq cn^{\log_b a} (\log_b(n))^k$ .

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) - n^{\log_b a} &= \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i f\left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right) \\ &\leq c \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i \left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right)^{\log_b a} \cdot \left(\log_b\left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right)\right)^k \end{aligned}$$

$n = b^\ell \Rightarrow \ell = \log_b n$
--

$$\begin{aligned} &= cn^{\log_b a} \sum_{i=0}^{\ell-1} \left(\log_b\left(\frac{b^\ell}{b^i}\right)\right)^k \\ &= cn^{\log_b a} \sum_{i=0}^{\ell-1} (\ell - i)^k \\ &= cn^{\log_b a} \sum_{i=1}^{\ell} i^k \\ &\approx \frac{c}{k} n^{\log_b a} \ell^{k+1} \end{aligned}$$

$\Rightarrow T(n) = \mathcal{O}(n^{\log_b a} \log^{k+1} n).$
--



**Case 3.** Now suppose that  $f(n) \geq dn^{\log_b a + \epsilon}$ , and that for sufficiently large  $n$ :  $af(n/b) \leq cf(n)$ , for  $c < 1$ .

**Case 3.** Now suppose that  $f(n) \geq dn^{\log_b a + \epsilon}$ , and that for sufficiently large  $n$ :  $af(n/b) \leq cf(n)$ , for  $c < 1$ .

From this we get  $a^i f(n/b^i) \leq c^i f(n)$ , where we assume that  $n/b^{i-1} \geq n_0$  is still sufficiently large.

**Case 3.** Now suppose that  $f(n) \geq dn^{\log_b a + \epsilon}$ , and that for sufficiently large  $n$ :  $af(n/b) \leq cf(n)$ , for  $c < 1$ .

From this we get  $a^i f(n/b^i) \leq c^i f(n)$ , where we assume that  $n/b^{i-1} \geq n_0$  is still sufficiently large.

$$T(n) - n^{\log_b a} = \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i f\left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right)$$

**Case 3.** Now suppose that  $f(n) \geq dn^{\log_b a + \epsilon}$ , and that for sufficiently large  $n$ :  $af(n/b) \leq cf(n)$ , for  $c < 1$ .

From this we get  $a^i f(n/b^i) \leq c^i f(n)$ , where we assume that  $n/b^{i-1} \geq n_0$  is still sufficiently large.

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) - n^{\log_b a} &= \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i f\left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right) \\ &= \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} c^i f(n) + \mathcal{O}(n^{\log_b a}) \end{aligned}$$

**Case 3.** Now suppose that  $f(n) \geq dn^{\log_b a + \epsilon}$ , and that for sufficiently large  $n$ :  $af(n/b) \leq cf(n)$ , for  $c < 1$ .

From this we get  $a^i f(n/b^i) \leq c^i f(n)$ , where we assume that  $n/b^{i-1} \geq n_0$  is still sufficiently large.

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) - n^{\log_b a} &= \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i f\left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right) \\ &= \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} c^i f(n) + \mathcal{O}(n^{\log_b a}) \end{aligned}$$

$$q < 1 : \sum_{i=0}^n q^i = \frac{1 - q^{n+1}}{1 - q} \leq \frac{1}{1 - q}$$

**Case 3.** Now suppose that  $f(n) \geq dn^{\log_b a + \epsilon}$ , and that for sufficiently large  $n$ :  $af(n/b) \leq cf(n)$ , for  $c < 1$ .

From this we get  $a^i f(n/b^i) \leq c^i f(n)$ , where we assume that  $n/b^{i-1} \geq n_0$  is still sufficiently large.

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) - n^{\log_b a} &= \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i f\left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right) \\ &= \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} c^i f(n) + \mathcal{O}(n^{\log_b a}) \\ &\leq \frac{1}{1-c} f(n) + \mathcal{O}(n^{\log_b a}) \end{aligned}$$

$$q < 1 : \sum_{i=0}^n q^i = \frac{1-q^{n+1}}{1-q} \leq \frac{1}{1-q}$$

**Case 3.** Now suppose that  $f(n) \geq dn^{\log_b a + \epsilon}$ , and that for sufficiently large  $n$ :  $af(n/b) \leq cf(n)$ , for  $c < 1$ .

From this we get  $a^i f(n/b^i) \leq c^i f(n)$ , where we assume that  $n/b^{i-1} \geq n_0$  is still sufficiently large.

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) - n^{\log_b a} &= \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i f\left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right) \\ &= \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} c^i f(n) + \mathcal{O}(n^{\log_b a}) \end{aligned}$$

$$\boxed{q < 1 : \sum_{i=0}^n q^i = \frac{1-q^{n+1}}{1-q} \leq \frac{1}{1-q}} \leq \frac{1}{1-c} f(n) + \mathcal{O}(n^{\log_b a})$$

Hence,

$$T(n) \leq \mathcal{O}(f(n))$$

**Case 3.** Now suppose that  $f(n) \geq dn^{\log_b a + \epsilon}$ , and that for sufficiently large  $n$ :  $af(n/b) \leq cf(n)$ , for  $c < 1$ .

From this we get  $a^i f(n/b^i) \leq c^i f(n)$ , where we assume that  $n/b^{i-1} \geq n_0$  is still sufficiently large.

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) - n^{\log_b a} &= \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} a^i f\left(\frac{n}{b^i}\right) \\ &= \sum_{i=0}^{\log_b n - 1} c^i f(n) + \mathcal{O}(n^{\log_b a}) \\ &\leq \frac{1}{1-c} f(n) + \mathcal{O}(n^{\log_b a}) \end{aligned}$$

$$q < 1 : \sum_{i=0}^n q^i = \frac{1-q^{n+1}}{1-q} \leq \frac{1}{1-q}$$

Hence,

$$T(n) \leq \mathcal{O}(f(n))$$

$$\Rightarrow T(n) = \Theta(f(n)).$$



## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

Suppose we want to multiply two  $n$ -bit Integers, but our registers can only perform operations on integers of constant size.

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

Suppose we want to multiply two  $n$ -bit Integers, but our registers can only perform operations on integers of constant size.

For this we first need to be able to add two integers  $A$  and  $B$ :

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

Suppose we want to multiply two  $n$ -bit Integers, but our registers can only perform operations on integers of constant size.

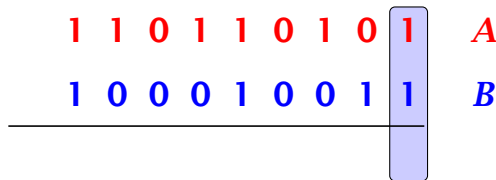
For this we first need to be able to add two integers  $A$  and  $B$ :

$$\begin{array}{r} 1\ 1\ 0\ 1\ 1\ 0\ 1\ 0\ 1\ A \\ 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1\ 0\ 0\ 1\ 1\ B \\ \hline \end{array}$$

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

Suppose we want to multiply two  $n$ -bit Integers, but our registers can only perform operations on integers of constant size.

For this we first need to be able to add two integers  $A$  and  $B$ :



## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

Suppose we want to multiply two  $n$ -bit Integers, but our registers can only perform operations on integers of constant size.

For this we first need to be able to add two integers  $A$  and  $B$ :

1	1	0	1	1	0	1	0	1	$A$
1	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	$B$
<hr/>								1	
								0	

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

Suppose we want to multiply two  $n$ -bit Integers, but our registers can only perform operations on integers of constant size.

For this we first need to be able to add two integers  $A$  and  $B$ :

1	1	0	1	1	0	1	0	1	A
1	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	B
<hr/>								1	
									0

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

Suppose we want to multiply two  $n$ -bit Integers, but our registers can only perform operations on integers of constant size.

For this we first need to be able to add two integers  $A$  and  $B$ :

1	1	0	1	1	0	1	0	1	$A$
1	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	$B$
							1	1	
							0	0	

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

Suppose we want to multiply two  $n$ -bit Integers, but our registers can only perform operations on integers of constant size.

For this we first need to be able to add two integers  $A$  and  $B$ :

The diagram illustrates the addition of two integers, A and B, in binary. The numbers are aligned by their least significant bits. A horizontal line is drawn below the numbers. A vertical blue bar highlights the carry propagation from bit 6 to bit 7. The carry is shown as a '1' in green below the bit 6 position, and another '1' in green below the bit 7 position. The result of the addition is shown below the horizontal line.

1	1	0	1	1	0	1	0	1	$A$
1	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	$B$
<hr/>									
						1	1	0	0



## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

Suppose we want to multiply two  $n$ -bit Integers, but our registers can only perform operations on integers of constant size.

For this we first need to be able to add two integers  $A$  and  $B$ :

1	1	0	1	1	0	1	0	1	$A$
1	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	$B$
<hr/>							0	0	0

The diagram illustrates the addition of two 9-bit integers, A and B. The bits of A are 1 1 0 1 1 0 1 0 1 and the bits of B are 1 0 0 0 1 0 0 1 1. A horizontal line is drawn under the 7th bit of B. The 7th, 8th, and 9th bits of the result are 0, 0, and 0, respectively. A vertical blue box highlights the 7th bit of A (1), the 7th bit of B (0), and the 7th bit of the result (0). Small green '1' characters are placed below the 7th, 8th, and 9th bits of the result, indicating carry bits.

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

Suppose we want to multiply two  $n$ -bit Integers, but our registers can only perform operations on integers of constant size.

For this we first need to be able to add two integers  $A$  and  $B$ :

1	1	0	1	1	0	1	0	1	$A$
1	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	$B$
<hr/>									
					1	1	1		
						0	0	0	

The diagram illustrates the addition of two 9-bit integers, A and B. A vertical blue box highlights the carry propagation from the 5th bit to the 6th bit. The carry bits are shown as small green '1's below the lines. The result of the addition is shown as 000 in the bottom row.

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

Suppose we want to multiply two  $n$ -bit Integers, but our registers can only perform operations on integers of constant size.

For this we first need to be able to add two integers  $A$  and  $B$ :

1	1	0	1	1	0	1	0	1	$A$
1	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	$B$
					0	1	1	1	
					1	0	0	0	

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

Suppose we want to multiply two  $n$ -bit Integers, but our registers can only perform operations on integers of constant size.

For this we first need to be able to add two integers  $A$  and  $B$ :

The diagram illustrates the addition of two integers, A and B, in binary. The numbers are aligned as follows:

1	1	0	1	1	0	1	0	1	$A$
1	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	$B$
<hr/>									
					1	0	0	0	

The vertical bar highlights the carry propagation from the 5th bit to the 6th bit. The carry bits are labeled as follows:

- 0: Carry into the 5th bit (from the 4th bit addition)
- 1: Carry into the 6th bit (from the 5th bit addition)
- 1: Carry into the 7th bit (from the 6th bit addition)
- 1: Carry into the 8th bit (from the 7th bit addition)

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

Suppose we want to multiply two  $n$ -bit Integers, but our registers can only perform operations on integers of constant size.

For this we first need to be able to add two integers  $A$  and  $B$ :

1	1	0	1	1	0	1	0	1	$A$
1	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	$B$
				1	0	1	1	1	
				0	1	0	0	0	

The diagram illustrates the addition of two 9-bit integers, A and B. A vertical bar highlights the carry propagation from bit 4 to bit 5. The carry bits are shown in green below the horizontal line.

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

Suppose we want to multiply two  $n$ -bit Integers, but our registers can only perform operations on integers of constant size.

For this we first need to be able to add two integers  $A$  and  $B$ :

1	1	0	1	1	0	1	0	1	$A$
1	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	$B$
<hr/>									
			1	0	1	1	1		
			0	1	0	0	0		

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

Suppose we want to multiply two  $n$ -bit Integers, but our registers can only perform operations on integers of constant size.

For this we first need to be able to add two integers  $A$  and  $B$ :

$$\begin{array}{rcccccccc} 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & A \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & B \\ \hline & & & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \end{array}$$

The diagram illustrates the addition of two 9-bit integers, A and B. The bits of A are 1, 1, 0, 1, 1, 0, 1, 0, 1. The bits of B are 1, 0, 0, 0, 1, 0, 0, 1, 1. A horizontal line is drawn under the bits of B. The result of the addition is shown below the line: 0, 0, 1, 0, 0, 0. A vertical blue box highlights the 4th bit (index 3) of both A and B, which are both 0, and the 4th bit of the result, which is 0. This indicates that the carry from the 3rd bit is 0.

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

Suppose we want to multiply two  $n$ -bit Integers, but our registers can only perform operations on integers of constant size.

For this we first need to be able to add two integers  $A$  and  $B$ :

1	1	0	1	1	0	1	0	1	$A$
1	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	$B$
<hr/>									
			1	1	0	1	1	1	
			0	0	1	0	0	0	



## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

Suppose we want to multiply two  $n$ -bit Integers, but our registers can only perform operations on integers of constant size.

For this we first need to be able to add two integers  $A$  and  $B$ :

The diagram illustrates the addition of two integers, A and B, in binary. The numbers are aligned by their least significant bits. A horizontal line is drawn under the numbers. The result of the addition is shown below the line. A vertical bar highlights the carry propagation from the third bit to the fourth bit.

1	1	0	1	1	0	1	0	1	$A$
1	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	$B$
	0	1	1	0	1	1	1		
<hr/>									
		1	0	0	1	0	0	0	

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

Suppose we want to multiply two  $n$ -bit Integers, but our registers can only perform operations on integers of constant size.

For this we first need to be able to add two integers  $A$  and  $B$ :

1	1	0	1	1	0	1	0	1	$A$
1	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	$B$
<hr/>									
	0	1	1	0	1	1	1		
		1	0	0	1	0	0	0	

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

Suppose we want to multiply two  $n$ -bit Integers, but our registers can only perform operations on integers of constant size.

For this we first need to be able to add two integers  $A$  and  $B$ :

	1	1	0	1	1	0	1	0	1	$A$
	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	$B$
	<small>0</small>	<small>0</small>	<small>1</small>	<small>1</small>	<small>0</small>	<small>1</small>	<small>1</small>	<small>1</small>		
<hr/>										
	1	1	0	0	1	0	0	0		

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

Suppose we want to multiply two  $n$ -bit Integers, but our registers can only perform operations on integers of constant size.

For this we first need to be able to add two integers  $A$  and  $B$ :

1	1	0	1	1	0	1	0	1	$A$
1	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	$B$
	0	0	1	1	0	1	1	1	
1	1	0	0	1	0	0	0		

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

Suppose we want to multiply two  $n$ -bit Integers, but our registers can only perform operations on integers of constant size.

For this we first need to be able to add two integers  $A$  and  $B$ :

		<b>1</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>1</b>	<i>A</i>
		<b>1</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>1</b>	<i>B</i>
<i>1</i>	<i>0</i>		<i>0</i>	<i>1</i>	<i>1</i>	<i>0</i>	<i>1</i>	<i>1</i>	<i>1</i>		
		<b>0</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>0</b>	

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

Suppose we want to multiply two  $n$ -bit Integers, but our registers can only perform operations on integers of constant size.

For this we first need to be able to add two integers  $A$  and  $B$ :

	1	1	0	1	1	0	1	0	1	$A$
1	0	0	1	1	0	1	1	1		$B$
<hr/>										
	0	1	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

Suppose we want to multiply two  $n$ -bit Integers, but our registers can only perform operations on integers of constant size.

For this we first need to be able to add two integers  $A$  and  $B$ :

	1	1	0	1	1	0	1	0	1	$A$
	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	$B$
	1	0	0	1	1	0	1	1	1	
	1	0	1	1	0	0	1	0	0	0

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

Suppose we want to multiply two  $n$ -bit Integers, but our registers can only perform operations on integers of constant size.

For this we first need to be able to add two integers  $A$  and  $B$ :

$$\begin{array}{r} 110110101 \quad A \\ 100010011 \quad B \\ \hline 1011001000 \end{array}$$

This gives that two  $n$ -bit integers can be added in time  $\mathcal{O}(n)$ .



## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

Suppose that we want to multiply an  $n$ -bit integer  $A$  and an  $m$ -bit integer  $B$  ( $m \leq n$ ).

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

Suppose that we want to multiply an  $n$ -bit integer  $A$  and an  $m$ -bit integer  $B$  ( $m \leq n$ ).

$$\begin{array}{r} 10001 \times 1011 \\ \hline \end{array}$$

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

Suppose that we want to multiply an  $n$ -bit integer  $A$  and an  $m$ -bit integer  $B$  ( $m \leq n$ ).

$$\begin{array}{r} 10001 \times 1011 \\ \hline \end{array}$$

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

Suppose that we want to multiply an  $n$ -bit integer  $A$  and an  $m$ -bit integer  $B$  ( $m \leq n$ ).

$$\begin{array}{r} 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1 \times 1\ 0\ 1\ 1 \\ \hline 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1 \end{array}$$

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

Suppose that we want to multiply an  $n$ -bit integer  $A$  and an  $m$ -bit integer  $B$  ( $m \leq n$ ).

$$\begin{array}{r} 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1 \times 1\ 0\ 1\ 1 \\ \hline 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1 \end{array}$$

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

Suppose that we want to multiply an  $n$ -bit integer  $A$  and an  $m$ -bit integer  $B$  ( $m \leq n$ ).

$$\begin{array}{r} 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1 \times 1\ 0\ 1\ 1 \\ \hline 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1 \\ \phantom{1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1} 0 \\ \phantom{1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1} 0 \end{array}$$

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

Suppose that we want to multiply an  $n$ -bit integer  $A$  and an  $m$ -bit integer  $B$  ( $m \leq n$ ).

$$\begin{array}{r} 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1 \times 1\ 0\ 1\ 1 \\ \hline \phantom{1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1} 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1 \\ \phantom{1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1} 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1\ 0 \end{array}$$

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

Suppose that we want to multiply an  $n$ -bit integer  $A$  and an  $m$ -bit integer  $B$  ( $m \leq n$ ).

$$\begin{array}{r} 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1 \times 1\ 0\ 1\ 1 \\ \hline \phantom{1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1} 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1 \\ \phantom{1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1} 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1\ 0 \end{array}$$



## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

Suppose that we want to multiply an  $n$ -bit integer  $A$  and an  $m$ -bit integer  $B$  ( $m \leq n$ ).

$$\begin{array}{r} 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1 \times 1\ 0\ 1\ 1 \\ \hline \phantom{1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1} 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1 \\ \phantom{1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1} 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1\ 0 \\ \phantom{1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1} \phantom{1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1} 0\ 0 \end{array}$$

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

Suppose that we want to multiply an  $n$ -bit integer  $A$  and an  $m$ -bit integer  $B$  ( $m \leq n$ ).

$$\begin{array}{r} 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1 \times 1\ 0\ 1\ 1 \\ \hline \phantom{1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1} 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1 \\ \phantom{1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1} 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1\ 0 \\ \phantom{1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1} 0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0 \end{array}$$

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

Suppose that we want to multiply an  $n$ -bit integer  $A$  and an  $m$ -bit integer  $B$  ( $m \leq n$ ).

$$\begin{array}{r} 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1 \times 1\ 0\ 1\ 1 \\ \hline \phantom{1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1} 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1 \\ \phantom{1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1} 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1\ 0 \\ \phantom{1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1} 0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0 \end{array}$$

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

Suppose that we want to multiply an  $n$ -bit integer  $A$  and an  $m$ -bit integer  $B$  ( $m \leq n$ ).

$$\begin{array}{r} 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1 \times 1\ 0\ 1\ 1 \\ \hline \phantom{1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1} 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1 \\ \phantom{1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1} 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1\ 0 \\ \phantom{1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1} 0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0 \\ \phantom{1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1} \phantom{0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0} 0\ 0\ 0 \end{array}$$

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

Suppose that we want to multiply an  $n$ -bit integer  $A$  and an  $m$ -bit integer  $B$  ( $m \leq n$ ).

$$\begin{array}{r} 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1 \times 1\ 0\ 1\ 1 \\ \hline \phantom{1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1} 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1 \\ \phantom{1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1} 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1\ 0 \\ \phantom{1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1} 0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0 \\ 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1\ 0\ 0\ 0 \end{array}$$

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

Suppose that we want to multiply an  $n$ -bit integer  $A$  and an  $m$ -bit integer  $B$  ( $m \leq n$ ).

$$\begin{array}{r} 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1 \times 1\ 0\ 1\ 1 \\ \hline \phantom{1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1} 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1 \\ \phantom{1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1} 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1\ 0 \\ \phantom{1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1} 0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0 \\ \phantom{1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1} 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1\ 0\ 0\ 0 \\ \hline \end{array}$$

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

Suppose that we want to multiply an  $n$ -bit integer  $A$  and an  $m$ -bit integer  $B$  ( $m \leq n$ ).

$$\begin{array}{r} 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1 \times 1\ 0\ 1\ 1 \\ \hline \phantom{1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1} 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1 \\ \phantom{1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1} 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1\ 0 \\ \phantom{1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1} 0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0 \\ \phantom{1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1} 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1\ 0\ 0\ 0 \\ \hline 1\ 0\ 1\ 1\ 1\ 0\ 1\ 1 \end{array}$$

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

Suppose that we want to multiply an  $n$ -bit integer  $A$  and an  $m$ -bit integer  $B$  ( $m \leq n$ ).

$$\begin{array}{r} 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1 \times 1\ 0\ 1\ 1 \\ \hline \phantom{1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1} 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1 \\ \phantom{1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1} 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1\ 0 \\ \phantom{1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1} 0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0 \\ \phantom{1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1} 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1\ 0\ 0\ 0 \\ \hline 1\ 0\ 1\ 1\ 1\ 0\ 1\ 1 \end{array}$$

**Time requirement:**



## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

Suppose that we want to multiply an  $n$ -bit integer  $A$  and an  $m$ -bit integer  $B$  ( $m \leq n$ ).

$$\begin{array}{r} 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1 \times 1\ 0\ 1\ 1 \\ \hline \phantom{1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1} 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1 \\ \phantom{1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1} 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1\ 0 \\ \phantom{1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1} 0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0 \\ \phantom{1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1} 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1\ 0\ 0\ 0 \\ \hline 1\ 0\ 1\ 1\ 1\ 0\ 1\ 1 \end{array}$$

**Time requirement:**

- ▶ Computing intermediate results:  $\mathcal{O}(nm)$ .

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

Suppose that we want to multiply an  $n$ -bit integer  $A$  and an  $m$ -bit integer  $B$  ( $m \leq n$ ).

$$\begin{array}{r} 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1 \times 1\ 0\ 1\ 1 \\ \hline \phantom{1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1} 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1 \\ \phantom{1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1} 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1\ 0 \\ \phantom{1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1} 0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0 \\ \phantom{1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1} 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1\ 0\ 0\ 0 \\ \hline 1\ 0\ 1\ 1\ 1\ 0\ 1\ 1 \end{array}$$

**Time requirement:**

- ▶ Computing intermediate results:  $\mathcal{O}(nm)$ .
- ▶ Adding  $m$  numbers of length  $\leq 2n$ :  
 $\mathcal{O}((m+n)m) = \mathcal{O}(nm)$ .

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

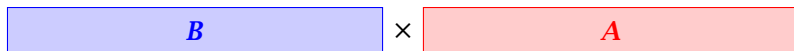
**A recursive approach:**

Suppose that integers  $A$  and  $B$  are of length  $n = 2^k$ , for some  $k$ .

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

**A recursive approach:**

Suppose that integers  $A$  and  $B$  are of length  $n = 2^k$ , for some  $k$ .


$$\boxed{B} \times \boxed{A}$$

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

**A recursive approach:**

Suppose that integers  $A$  and  $B$  are of length  $n = 2^k$ , for some  $k$ .

$$\boxed{b_n \quad \dots \quad b_0} \times \boxed{a_n \quad \dots \quad a_0}$$

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

**A recursive approach:**

Suppose that integers  $A$  and  $B$  are of length  $n = 2^k$ , for some  $k$ .

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} b_n & \cdots & b_{\frac{n}{2}} & b_{\frac{n}{2}-1} & \cdots & b_0 & \\ \times & & a_n & \cdots & a_{\frac{n}{2}} & a_{\frac{n}{2}-1} & \cdots & a_0 \end{array}$$

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

**A recursive approach:**

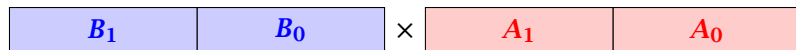
Suppose that integers  $A$  and  $B$  are of length  $n = 2^k$ , for some  $k$ .

$$\begin{array}{|c|c|} \hline B_1 & B_0 \\ \hline \end{array} \times \begin{array}{|c|c|} \hline A_1 & A_0 \\ \hline \end{array}$$

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

**A recursive approach:**

Suppose that integers  $A$  and  $B$  are of length  $n = 2^k$ , for some  $k$ .



Then it holds that

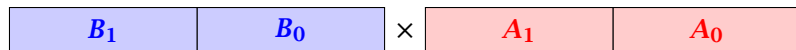
$$A = A_1 \cdot 2^{\frac{n}{2}} + A_0 \text{ and } B = B_1 \cdot 2^{\frac{n}{2}} + B_0$$



## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

**A recursive approach:**

Suppose that integers  $A$  and  $B$  are of length  $n = 2^k$ , for some  $k$ .



Then it holds that

$$A = A_1 \cdot 2^{\frac{n}{2}} + A_0 \text{ and } B = B_1 \cdot 2^{\frac{n}{2}} + B_0$$

Hence,

$$A \cdot B = A_1 B_1 \cdot 2^n + (A_1 B_0 + A_0 B_1) \cdot 2^{\frac{n}{2}} + A_0 \cdot B_0$$

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

### Algorithm 3 $\text{mult}(A, B)$

```
1: if  $|A| = |B| = 1$  then  
2:   return  $a_0 \cdot b_0$   
3: split  $A$  into  $A_0$  and  $A_1$   
4: split  $B$  into  $B_0$  and  $B_1$   
5:  $Z_2 \leftarrow \text{mult}(A_1, B_1)$   
6:  $Z_1 \leftarrow \text{mult}(A_1, B_0) + \text{mult}(A_0, B_1)$   
7:  $Z_0 \leftarrow \text{mult}(A_0, B_0)$   
8: return  $Z_2 \cdot 2^n + Z_1 \cdot 2^{\frac{n}{2}} + Z_0$ 
```

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

### Algorithm 3 $\text{mult}(A, B)$

```
1: if  $|A| = |B| = 1$  then  
2:   return  $a_0 \cdot b_0$   
3: split  $A$  into  $A_0$  and  $A_1$   
4: split  $B$  into  $B_0$  and  $B_1$   
5:  $Z_2 \leftarrow \text{mult}(A_1, B_1)$   
6:  $Z_1 \leftarrow \text{mult}(A_1, B_0) + \text{mult}(A_0, B_1)$   
7:  $Z_0 \leftarrow \text{mult}(A_0, B_0)$   
8: return  $Z_2 \cdot 2^n + Z_1 \cdot 2^{\frac{n}{2}} + Z_0$ 
```

$\mathcal{O}(1)$

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

### Algorithm 3 $\text{mult}(A, B)$

1: **if**  $|A| = |B| = 1$  **then**

$\mathcal{O}(1)$

2:     **return**  $a_0 \cdot b_0$

$\mathcal{O}(1)$

3: split  $A$  into  $A_0$  and  $A_1$

4: split  $B$  into  $B_0$  and  $B_1$

5:  $Z_2 \leftarrow \text{mult}(A_1, B_1)$

6:  $Z_1 \leftarrow \text{mult}(A_1, B_0) + \text{mult}(A_0, B_1)$

7:  $Z_0 \leftarrow \text{mult}(A_0, B_0)$

8: **return**  $Z_2 \cdot 2^n + Z_1 \cdot 2^{\frac{n}{2}} + Z_0$

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

### Algorithm 3 $\text{mult}(A, B)$

1: **if**  $|A| = |B| = 1$  **then**

$\mathcal{O}(1)$

2:     **return**  $a_0 \cdot b_0$

$\mathcal{O}(1)$

3: split  $A$  into  $A_0$  and  $A_1$

$\mathcal{O}(n)$

4: split  $B$  into  $B_0$  and  $B_1$

5:  $Z_2 \leftarrow \text{mult}(A_1, B_1)$

6:  $Z_1 \leftarrow \text{mult}(A_1, B_0) + \text{mult}(A_0, B_1)$

7:  $Z_0 \leftarrow \text{mult}(A_0, B_0)$

8: **return**  $Z_2 \cdot 2^n + Z_1 \cdot 2^{\frac{n}{2}} + Z_0$

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

### Algorithm 3 $\text{mult}(A, B)$

- 1: **if**  $|A| = |B| = 1$  **then**  $\mathcal{O}(1)$
- 2:     **return**  $a_0 \cdot b_0$   $\mathcal{O}(1)$
- 3: split  $A$  into  $A_0$  and  $A_1$   $\mathcal{O}(n)$
- 4: split  $B$  into  $B_0$  and  $B_1$   $\mathcal{O}(n)$
- 5:  $Z_2 \leftarrow \text{mult}(A_1, B_1)$
- 6:  $Z_1 \leftarrow \text{mult}(A_1, B_0) + \text{mult}(A_0, B_1)$
- 7:  $Z_0 \leftarrow \text{mult}(A_0, B_0)$
- 8: **return**  $Z_2 \cdot 2^n + Z_1 \cdot 2^{\frac{n}{2}} + Z_0$

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

### Algorithm 3 $\text{mult}(A, B)$

1: **if**  $|A| = |B| = 1$  **then**

2:     **return**  $a_0 \cdot b_0$

3: split  $A$  into  $A_0$  and  $A_1$

4: split  $B$  into  $B_0$  and  $B_1$

5:  $Z_2 \leftarrow \text{mult}(A_1, B_1)$

6:  $Z_1 \leftarrow \text{mult}(A_1, B_0) + \text{mult}(A_0, B_1)$

7:  $Z_0 \leftarrow \text{mult}(A_0, B_0)$

8: **return**  $Z_2 \cdot 2^n + Z_1 \cdot 2^{\frac{n}{2}} + Z_0$

$\mathcal{O}(1)$

$\mathcal{O}(1)$

$\mathcal{O}(n)$

$\mathcal{O}(n)$

$T(\frac{n}{2})$

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

### Algorithm 3 $\text{mult}(A, B)$

1: **if**  $|A| = |B| = 1$  **then**

2:     **return**  $a_0 \cdot b_0$

3: split  $A$  into  $A_0$  and  $A_1$

4: split  $B$  into  $B_0$  and  $B_1$

5:  $Z_2 \leftarrow \text{mult}(A_1, B_1)$

6:  $Z_1 \leftarrow \text{mult}(A_1, B_0) + \text{mult}(A_0, B_1)$

7:  $Z_0 \leftarrow \text{mult}(A_0, B_0)$

8: **return**  $Z_2 \cdot 2^n + Z_1 \cdot 2^{\frac{n}{2}} + Z_0$

$\mathcal{O}(1)$

$\mathcal{O}(1)$

$\mathcal{O}(n)$

$\mathcal{O}(n)$

$T(\frac{n}{2})$

$2T(\frac{n}{2}) + \mathcal{O}(n)$



## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

### Algorithm 3 $\text{mult}(A, B)$

1: **if**  $|A| = |B| = 1$  **then**

$\mathcal{O}(1)$

2:     **return**  $a_0 \cdot b_0$

$\mathcal{O}(1)$

3: split  $A$  into  $A_0$  and  $A_1$

$\mathcal{O}(n)$

4: split  $B$  into  $B_0$  and  $B_1$

$\mathcal{O}(n)$

5:  $Z_2 \leftarrow \text{mult}(A_1, B_1)$

$T(\frac{n}{2})$

6:  $Z_1 \leftarrow \text{mult}(A_1, B_0) + \text{mult}(A_0, B_1)$

$2T(\frac{n}{2}) + \mathcal{O}(n)$

7:  $Z_0 \leftarrow \text{mult}(A_0, B_0)$

$T(\frac{n}{2})$

8: **return**  $Z_2 \cdot 2^n + Z_1 \cdot 2^{\frac{n}{2}} + Z_0$

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

### Algorithm 3 $\text{mult}(A, B)$

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1: <b>if</b> $ A  =  B  = 1$ <b>then</b>                           | $\mathcal{O}(1)$                              |
| 2: <b>return</b> $a_0 \cdot b_0$                                   | $\mathcal{O}(1)$                              |
| 3: split $A$ into $A_0$ and $A_1$                                  | $\mathcal{O}(n)$                              |
| 4: split $B$ into $B_0$ and $B_1$                                  | $\mathcal{O}(n)$                              |
| 5: $Z_2 \leftarrow \text{mult}(A_1, B_1)$                          | $T\left(\frac{n}{2}\right)$                   |
| 6: $Z_1 \leftarrow \text{mult}(A_1, B_0) + \text{mult}(A_0, B_1)$  | $2T\left(\frac{n}{2}\right) + \mathcal{O}(n)$ |
| 7: $Z_0 \leftarrow \text{mult}(A_0, B_0)$                          | $T\left(\frac{n}{2}\right)$                   |
| 8: <b>return</b> $Z_2 \cdot 2^n + Z_1 \cdot 2^{\frac{n}{2}} + Z_0$ | $\mathcal{O}(n)$                              |

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

### Algorithm 3 $\text{mult}(A, B)$

1: <b>if</b> $ A  =  B  = 1$ <b>then</b>	$\mathcal{O}(1)$
2: <b>return</b> $a_0 \cdot b_0$	$\mathcal{O}(1)$
3: split $A$ into $A_0$ and $A_1$	$\mathcal{O}(n)$
4: split $B$ into $B_0$ and $B_1$	$\mathcal{O}(n)$
5: $Z_2 \leftarrow \text{mult}(A_1, B_1)$	$T\left(\frac{n}{2}\right)$
6: $Z_1 \leftarrow \text{mult}(A_1, B_0) + \text{mult}(A_0, B_1)$	$2T\left(\frac{n}{2}\right) + \mathcal{O}(n)$
7: $Z_0 \leftarrow \text{mult}(A_0, B_0)$	$T\left(\frac{n}{2}\right)$
8: <b>return</b> $Z_2 \cdot 2^n + Z_1 \cdot 2^{\frac{n}{2}} + Z_0$	$\mathcal{O}(n)$

We get the following recurrence:

$$T(n) = 4T\left(\frac{n}{2}\right) + \mathcal{O}(n) .$$

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

**Master Theorem:** Recurrence:  $T[n] = aT(\frac{n}{b}) + f(n)$ .

- ▶ Case 1:  $f(n) = \mathcal{O}(n^{\log_b a - \epsilon})$        $T(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b a})$
- ▶ Case 2:  $f(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b a} \log^k n)$        $T(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b a} \log^{k+1} n)$
- ▶ Case 3:  $f(n) = \Omega(n^{\log_b a + \epsilon})$        $T(n) = \Theta(f(n))$

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

**Master Theorem:** Recurrence:  $T[n] = aT(\frac{n}{b}) + f(n)$ .

- ▶ Case 1:  $f(n) = \mathcal{O}(n^{\log_b a - \epsilon})$        $T(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b a})$
- ▶ Case 2:  $f(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b a} \log^k n)$        $T(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b a} \log^{k+1} n)$
- ▶ Case 3:  $f(n) = \Omega(n^{\log_b a + \epsilon})$        $T(n) = \Theta(f(n))$

In our case  $a = 4$ ,  $b = 2$ , and  $f(n) = \Theta(n)$ . Hence, we are in Case 1, since  $n = \mathcal{O}(n^{2-\epsilon}) = \mathcal{O}(n^{\log_b a - \epsilon})$ .

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

**Master Theorem:** Recurrence:  $T[n] = aT(\frac{n}{b}) + f(n)$ .

- ▶ Case 1:  $f(n) = \mathcal{O}(n^{\log_b a - \epsilon})$        $T(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b a})$
- ▶ Case 2:  $f(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b a} \log^k n)$        $T(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b a} \log^{k+1} n)$
- ▶ Case 3:  $f(n) = \Omega(n^{\log_b a + \epsilon})$        $T(n) = \Theta(f(n))$

In our case  $a = 4$ ,  $b = 2$ , and  $f(n) = \Theta(n)$ . Hence, we are in Case 1, since  $n = \mathcal{O}(n^{2-\epsilon}) = \mathcal{O}(n^{\log_b a - \epsilon})$ .

We get a running time of  $\mathcal{O}(n^2)$  for our algorithm.

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

**Master Theorem:** Recurrence:  $T[n] = aT(\frac{n}{b}) + f(n)$ .

- ▶ Case 1:  $f(n) = \mathcal{O}(n^{\log_b a - \epsilon})$        $T(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b a})$
- ▶ Case 2:  $f(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b a} \log^k n)$        $T(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b a} \log^{k+1} n)$
- ▶ Case 3:  $f(n) = \Omega(n^{\log_b a + \epsilon})$        $T(n) = \Theta(f(n))$

In our case  $a = 4$ ,  $b = 2$ , and  $f(n) = \Theta(n)$ . Hence, we are in Case 1, since  $n = \mathcal{O}(n^{2-\epsilon}) = \mathcal{O}(n^{\log_b a - \epsilon})$ .

We get a running time of  $\mathcal{O}(n^2)$  for our algorithm.

⇒ Not better than the “school method”.

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

We can use the following identity to compute  $Z_1$ :



## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

We can use the following identity to compute  $Z_1$ :

$$Z_1 = A_1B_0 + A_0B_1$$

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

We can use the following identity to compute  $Z_1$ :

$$\begin{aligned}Z_1 &= A_1B_0 + A_0B_1 \\ &= (A_0 + A_1) \cdot (B_0 + B_1) - A_1B_1 - A_0B_0\end{aligned}$$

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

We can use the following identity to compute  $Z_1$ :

$$\begin{aligned} Z_1 &= A_1 B_0 + A_0 B_1 && = Z_2 && = Z_0 \\ &= (A_0 + A_1) \cdot (B_0 + B_1) - \underbrace{A_1 B_1}_{Z_2} - \underbrace{A_0 B_0}_{Z_0} \end{aligned}$$

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

We can use the following identity to compute  $Z_1$ :

$$\begin{aligned} Z_1 &= A_1 B_0 + A_0 B_1 && = Z_2 && = Z_0 \\ &= (A_0 + A_1) \cdot (B_0 + B_1) - \underbrace{A_1 B_1}_{Z_2} - \underbrace{A_0 B_0}_{Z_0} \end{aligned}$$

Hence,

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

We can use the following identity to compute  $Z_1$ :

$$\begin{aligned} Z_1 &= A_1B_0 + A_0B_1 && = Z_2 && = Z_0 \\ &= (A_0 + A_1) \cdot (B_0 + B_1) - \underbrace{A_1B_1}_{Z_2} - \underbrace{A_0B_0}_{Z_0} \end{aligned}$$

Hence,

### Algorithm 4 mult( $A, B$ )

```
1: if  $|A| = |B| = 1$  then
2:   return  $a_0 \cdot b_0$ 
3: split  $A$  into  $A_0$  and  $A_1$ 
4: split  $B$  into  $B_0$  and  $B_1$ 
5:  $Z_2 \leftarrow \text{mult}(A_1, B_1)$ 
6:  $Z_0 \leftarrow \text{mult}(A_0, B_0)$ 
7:  $Z_1 \leftarrow \text{mult}(A_0 + A_1, B_0 + B_1) - Z_2 - Z_0$ 
8: return  $Z_2 \cdot 2^n + Z_1 \cdot 2^{\frac{n}{2}} + Z_0$ 
```

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

We can use the following identity to compute  $Z_1$ :

$$\begin{aligned} Z_1 &= A_1B_0 + A_0B_1 && = Z_2 && = Z_0 \\ &= (A_0 + A_1) \cdot (B_0 + B_1) - \underbrace{A_1B_1}_{Z_2} - \underbrace{A_0B_0}_{Z_0} \end{aligned}$$

Hence,

### Algorithm 4 mult( $A, B$ )

```
1: if  $|A| = |B| = 1$  then
2:   return  $a_0 \cdot b_0$ 
3: split  $A$  into  $A_0$  and  $A_1$ 
4: split  $B$  into  $B_0$  and  $B_1$ 
5:  $Z_2 \leftarrow \text{mult}(A_1, B_1)$ 
6:  $Z_0 \leftarrow \text{mult}(A_0, B_0)$ 
7:  $Z_1 \leftarrow \text{mult}(A_0 + A_1, B_0 + B_1) - Z_2 - Z_0$ 
8: return  $Z_2 \cdot 2^n + Z_1 \cdot 2^{\frac{n}{2}} + Z_0$ 
```

$\mathcal{O}(1)$

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

We can use the following identity to compute  $Z_1$ :

$$\begin{aligned} Z_1 &= A_1 B_0 + A_0 B_1 && = Z_2 && = Z_0 \\ &= (A_0 + A_1) \cdot (B_0 + B_1) - \underbrace{A_1 B_1}_{Z_2} - \underbrace{A_0 B_0}_{Z_0} \end{aligned}$$

Hence,

### Algorithm 4 mult( $A, B$ )

1: **if**  $|A| = |B| = 1$  **then**

$\mathcal{O}(1)$

2:     **return**  $a_0 \cdot b_0$

$\mathcal{O}(1)$

3: split  $A$  into  $A_0$  and  $A_1$

4: split  $B$  into  $B_0$  and  $B_1$

5:  $Z_2 \leftarrow \text{mult}(A_1, B_1)$

6:  $Z_0 \leftarrow \text{mult}(A_0, B_0)$

7:  $Z_1 \leftarrow \text{mult}(A_0 + A_1, B_0 + B_1) - Z_2 - Z_0$

8: **return**  $Z_2 \cdot 2^n + Z_1 \cdot 2^{\frac{n}{2}} + Z_0$

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

We can use the following identity to compute  $Z_1$ :

$$\begin{aligned} Z_1 &= A_1 B_0 + A_0 B_1 && = Z_2 && = Z_0 \\ &= (A_0 + A_1) \cdot (B_0 + B_1) - \underbrace{A_1 B_1}_{Z_2} - \underbrace{A_0 B_0}_{Z_0} \end{aligned}$$

Hence,

### Algorithm 4 mult( $A, B$ )

1: **if**  $|A| = |B| = 1$  **then**

$\mathcal{O}(1)$

2:     **return**  $a_0 \cdot b_0$

$\mathcal{O}(1)$

3: split  $A$  into  $A_0$  and  $A_1$

$\mathcal{O}(n)$

4: split  $B$  into  $B_0$  and  $B_1$

5:  $Z_2 \leftarrow \text{mult}(A_1, B_1)$

6:  $Z_0 \leftarrow \text{mult}(A_0, B_0)$

7:  $Z_1 \leftarrow \text{mult}(A_0 + A_1, B_0 + B_1) - Z_2 - Z_0$

8: **return**  $Z_2 \cdot 2^n + Z_1 \cdot 2^{\frac{n}{2}} + Z_0$



## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

We can use the following identity to compute  $Z_1$ :

$$\begin{aligned} Z_1 &= A_1 B_0 + A_0 B_1 && = Z_2 && = Z_0 \\ &= (A_0 + A_1) \cdot (B_0 + B_1) - \underbrace{A_1 B_1}_{Z_2} - \underbrace{A_0 B_0}_{Z_0} \end{aligned}$$

Hence,

### Algorithm 4 mult( $A, B$ )

1: <b>if</b> $ A  =  B  = 1$ <b>then</b>	$\mathcal{O}(1)$
2: <b>return</b> $a_0 \cdot b_0$	$\mathcal{O}(1)$
3: split $A$ into $A_0$ and $A_1$	$\mathcal{O}(n)$
4: split $B$ into $B_0$ and $B_1$	$\mathcal{O}(n)$
5: $Z_2 \leftarrow \text{mult}(A_1, B_1)$	
6: $Z_0 \leftarrow \text{mult}(A_0, B_0)$	
7: $Z_1 \leftarrow \text{mult}(A_0 + A_1, B_0 + B_1) - Z_2 - Z_0$	
8: <b>return</b> $Z_2 \cdot 2^n + Z_1 \cdot 2^{\frac{n}{2}} + Z_0$	

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

We can use the following identity to compute  $Z_1$ :

$$\begin{aligned} Z_1 &= A_1B_0 + A_0B_1 && = Z_2 && = Z_0 \\ &= (A_0 + A_1) \cdot (B_0 + B_1) - \underbrace{A_1B_1}_{Z_2} - \underbrace{A_0B_0}_{Z_0} \end{aligned}$$

Hence,

### Algorithm 4 mult( $A, B$ )

1: **if**  $|A| = |B| = 1$  **then**

$\mathcal{O}(1)$

2:     **return**  $a_0 \cdot b_0$

$\mathcal{O}(1)$

3: split  $A$  into  $A_0$  and  $A_1$

$\mathcal{O}(n)$

4: split  $B$  into  $B_0$  and  $B_1$

$\mathcal{O}(n)$

5:  $Z_2 \leftarrow \text{mult}(A_1, B_1)$

$T(\frac{n}{2})$

6:  $Z_0 \leftarrow \text{mult}(A_0, B_0)$

7:  $Z_1 \leftarrow \text{mult}(A_0 + A_1, B_0 + B_1) - Z_2 - Z_0$

8: **return**  $Z_2 \cdot 2^n + Z_1 \cdot 2^{\frac{n}{2}} + Z_0$

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

We can use the following identity to compute  $Z_1$ :

$$\begin{aligned} Z_1 &= A_1 B_0 + A_0 B_1 && = Z_2 && = Z_0 \\ &= (A_0 + A_1) \cdot (B_0 + B_1) - \underbrace{A_1 B_1}_{Z_2} - \underbrace{A_0 B_0}_{Z_0} \end{aligned}$$

Hence,

### Algorithm 4 mult( $A, B$ )

1: **if**  $|A| = |B| = 1$  **then**

2:     **return**  $a_0 \cdot b_0$

3: split  $A$  into  $A_0$  and  $A_1$

4: split  $B$  into  $B_0$  and  $B_1$

5:  $Z_2 \leftarrow \text{mult}(A_1, B_1)$

6:  $Z_0 \leftarrow \text{mult}(A_0, B_0)$

7:  $Z_1 \leftarrow \text{mult}(A_0 + A_1, B_0 + B_1) - Z_2 - Z_0$

8: **return**  $Z_2 \cdot 2^n + Z_1 \cdot 2^{\frac{n}{2}} + Z_0$

$\mathcal{O}(1)$

$\mathcal{O}(1)$

$\mathcal{O}(n)$

$\mathcal{O}(n)$

$T(\frac{n}{2})$

$T(\frac{n}{2})$

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

We can use the following identity to compute  $Z_1$ :

$$\begin{aligned} Z_1 &= A_1 B_0 + A_0 B_1 && = Z_2 && = Z_0 \\ &= (A_0 + A_1) \cdot (B_0 + B_1) - \underbrace{A_1 B_1}_{Z_2} - \underbrace{A_0 B_0}_{Z_0} \end{aligned}$$

Hence,

### Algorithm 4 mult( $A, B$ )

1: **if**  $|A| = |B| = 1$  **then**

$\mathcal{O}(1)$

2:     **return**  $a_0 \cdot b_0$

$\mathcal{O}(1)$

3: split  $A$  into  $A_0$  and  $A_1$

$\mathcal{O}(n)$

4: split  $B$  into  $B_0$  and  $B_1$

$\mathcal{O}(n)$

5:  $Z_2 \leftarrow \text{mult}(A_1, B_1)$

$T(\frac{n}{2})$

6:  $Z_0 \leftarrow \text{mult}(A_0, B_0)$

$T(\frac{n}{2})$

7:  $Z_1 \leftarrow \text{mult}(A_0 + A_1, B_0 + B_1) - Z_2 - Z_0$

$T(\frac{n}{2}) + \mathcal{O}(n)$

8: **return**  $Z_2 \cdot 2^n + Z_1 \cdot 2^{\frac{n}{2}} + Z_0$

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

We can use the following identity to compute  $Z_1$ :

$$\begin{aligned} Z_1 &= A_1 B_0 + A_0 B_1 && = Z_2 && = Z_0 \\ &= (A_0 + A_1) \cdot (B_0 + B_1) - \underbrace{A_1 B_1}_{Z_2} - \underbrace{A_0 B_0}_{Z_0} \end{aligned}$$

Hence,

### Algorithm 4 mult( $A, B$ )

1: <b>if</b> $ A  =  B  = 1$ <b>then</b>	$\mathcal{O}(1)$
2: <b>return</b> $a_0 \cdot b_0$	$\mathcal{O}(1)$
3: split $A$ into $A_0$ and $A_1$	$\mathcal{O}(n)$
4: split $B$ into $B_0$ and $B_1$	$\mathcal{O}(n)$
5: $Z_2 \leftarrow \text{mult}(A_1, B_1)$	$T(\frac{n}{2})$
6: $Z_0 \leftarrow \text{mult}(A_0, B_0)$	$T(\frac{n}{2})$
7: $Z_1 \leftarrow \text{mult}(A_0 + A_1, B_0 + B_1) - Z_2 - Z_0$	$T(\frac{n}{2}) + \mathcal{O}(n)$
8: <b>return</b> $Z_2 \cdot 2^n + Z_1 \cdot 2^{\frac{n}{2}} + Z_0$	$\mathcal{O}(n)$

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

We get the following recurrence:

$$T(n) = 3T\left(\frac{n}{2}\right) + \mathcal{O}(n) .$$

**Master Theorem:** Recurrence:  $T[n] = aT\left(\frac{n}{b}\right) + f(n)$ .

- ▶ Case 1:  $f(n) = \mathcal{O}(n^{\log_b a - \epsilon})$        $T(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b a})$
- ▶ Case 2:  $f(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b a} \log^k n)$        $T(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b a} \log^{k+1} n)$
- ▶ Case 3:  $f(n) = \Omega(n^{\log_b a + \epsilon})$        $T(n) = \Theta(f(n))$

Again we are in Case 1. We get a running time of  $\Theta(n^{\log_2 3}) \approx \Theta(n^{1.59})$ .

A huge improvement over the “school method”.

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

We get the following recurrence:

$$T(n) = 3T\left(\frac{n}{2}\right) + \mathcal{O}(n) .$$

**Master Theorem:** Recurrence:  $T[n] = aT\left(\frac{n}{b}\right) + f(n)$ .

- ▶ Case 1:  $f(n) = \mathcal{O}(n^{\log_b a - \epsilon})$        $T(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b a})$
- ▶ Case 2:  $f(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b a} \log^k n)$        $T(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b a} \log^{k+1} n)$
- ▶ Case 3:  $f(n) = \Omega(n^{\log_b a + \epsilon})$        $T(n) = \Theta(f(n))$

Again we are in Case 1. We get a running time of  $\Theta(n^{\log_2 3}) \approx \Theta(n^{1.59})$ .

A huge improvement over the “school method”.

## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

We get the following recurrence:

$$T(n) = 3T\left(\frac{n}{2}\right) + \mathcal{O}(n) .$$

**Master Theorem:** Recurrence:  $T[n] = aT\left(\frac{n}{b}\right) + f(n)$ .

- ▶ Case 1:  $f(n) = \mathcal{O}(n^{\log_b a - \epsilon})$        $T(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b a})$
- ▶ Case 2:  $f(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b a} \log^k n)$        $T(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b a} \log^{k+1} n)$
- ▶ Case 3:  $f(n) = \Omega(n^{\log_b a + \epsilon})$        $T(n) = \Theta(f(n))$

Again we are in Case 1. We get a running time of  $\Theta(n^{\log_2 3}) \approx \Theta(n^{1.59})$ .

A huge improvement over the “school method”.



## Example: Multiplying Two Integers

We get the following recurrence:

$$T(n) = 3T\left(\frac{n}{2}\right) + \mathcal{O}(n) .$$

**Master Theorem:** Recurrence:  $T[n] = aT\left(\frac{n}{b}\right) + f(n)$ .

- ▶ Case 1:  $f(n) = \mathcal{O}(n^{\log_b a - \epsilon})$        $T(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b a})$
- ▶ Case 2:  $f(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b a} \log^k n)$        $T(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b a} \log^{k+1} n)$
- ▶ Case 3:  $f(n) = \Omega(n^{\log_b a + \epsilon})$        $T(n) = \Theta(f(n))$

Again we are in Case 1. We get a running time of  $\Theta(n^{\log_2 3}) \approx \Theta(n^{1.59})$ .

A huge improvement over the “school method”.

## 6.3 The Characteristic Polynomial

Consider the recurrence relation:

$$c_0T(n) + c_1T(n-1) + c_2T(n-2) + \dots + c_kT(n-k) = f(n)$$

This is the general form of a **linear** recurrence relation of **order  $k$**  with constant coefficients ( $c_0, c_k \neq 0$ ).

$T(n)$  only depends on the  $k$  preceding values. This means the recurrence relation is of **order  $k$** .

The recurrence is **linear** as there are no products of  $T(n)$ .

When  $f(n) = 0$ , then the recurrence relation becomes a **linear** recurrence relation of **order  $k$** .

Note that we ignore **boundary conditions** for the moment.

## 6.3 The Characteristic Polynomial

Consider the recurrence relation:

$$c_0T(n) + c_1T(n - 1) + c_2T(n - 2) + \dots + c_kT(n - k) = f(n)$$

This is the general form of a **linear** recurrence relation of **order**  $k$  with constant coefficients ( $c_0, c_k \neq 0$ ).

- ▶  $T(n)$  only depends on the  $k$  preceding values. This means the recurrence relation is of **order**  $k$ .
- ▶ The recurrence is linear as there are no products of  $T[n]$ 's.
- ▶ If  $f(n) = 0$  then the recurrence relation becomes a linear, **homogenous** recurrence relation of order  $k$ .

Note that we ignore **boundary conditions** for the moment.

## 6.3 The Characteristic Polynomial

Consider the recurrence relation:

$$c_0T(n) + c_1T(n-1) + c_2T(n-2) + \dots + c_kT(n-k) = f(n)$$

This is the general form of a **linear** recurrence relation of **order**  $k$  with constant coefficients ( $c_0, c_k \neq 0$ ).

- ▶  $T(n)$  only depends on the  $k$  preceding values. This means the recurrence relation is of **order**  $k$ .
- ▶ The recurrence is linear as there are no products of  $T[n]$ 's.
- ▶ If  $f(n) = 0$  then the recurrence relation becomes a linear, **homogenous** recurrence relation of order  $k$ .

Note that we ignore **boundary conditions** for the moment.

## 6.3 The Characteristic Polynomial

Consider the recurrence relation:

$$c_0T(n) + c_1T(n-1) + c_2T(n-2) + \dots + c_kT(n-k) = f(n)$$

This is the general form of a **linear** recurrence relation of **order**  $k$  with constant coefficients ( $c_0, c_k \neq 0$ ).

- ▶  $T(n)$  only depends on the  $k$  preceding values. This means the recurrence relation is of **order**  $k$ .
- ▶ The recurrence is linear as there are no products of  $T[n]$ 's.
- ▶ If  $f(n) = 0$  then the recurrence relation becomes a linear, **homogenous** recurrence relation of order  $k$ .

Note that we ignore **boundary conditions** for the moment.

## 6.3 The Characteristic Polynomial

Consider the recurrence relation:

$$c_0T(n) + c_1T(n-1) + c_2T(n-2) + \dots + c_kT(n-k) = f(n)$$

This is the general form of a **linear** recurrence relation of **order**  $k$  with constant coefficients ( $c_0, c_k \neq 0$ ).

- ▶  $T(n)$  only depends on the  $k$  preceding values. This means the recurrence relation is of **order**  $k$ .
- ▶ The recurrence is linear as there are no products of  $T[n]$ 's.
- ▶ If  $f(n) = 0$  then the recurrence relation becomes a linear, **homogenous** recurrence relation of order  $k$ .

Note that we ignore **boundary conditions** for the moment.

## 6.3 The Characteristic Polynomial

Consider the recurrence relation:

$$c_0T(n) + c_1T(n-1) + c_2T(n-2) + \dots + c_kT(n-k) = f(n)$$

This is the general form of a **linear** recurrence relation of **order**  $k$  with constant coefficients ( $c_0, c_k \neq 0$ ).

- ▶  $T(n)$  only depends on the  $k$  preceding values. This means the recurrence relation is of **order**  $k$ .
- ▶ The recurrence is linear as there are no products of  $T[n]$ 's.
- ▶ If  $f(n) = 0$  then the recurrence relation becomes a linear, **homogenous** recurrence relation of order  $k$ .

Note that we ignore **boundary conditions** for the moment.

## 6.3 The Characteristic Polynomial

### Observations:

- ▶ The solution  $T[1], T[2], T[3], \dots$  is completely determined by a set of **boundary conditions** that specify values for  $T[1], \dots, T[k]$ .
- ▶ In fact, any  $k$  consecutive values completely determine the solution.
- ▶  $k$  non-consecutive values might not be an appropriate set of boundary conditions (depends on the problem).

### Approach:

- ▶ First determine all solutions that satisfy recurrence relation.
- ▶ Then pick the right one by analyzing boundary conditions.
- ▶ First consider the homogenous case.



## 6.3 The Characteristic Polynomial

### Observations:

- ▶ The solution  $T[1], T[2], T[3], \dots$  is completely determined by a set of **boundary conditions** that specify values for  $T[1], \dots, T[k]$ .
- ▶ In fact, any  $k$  consecutive values completely determine the solution.
- ▶  $k$  non-consecutive values might not be an appropriate set of boundary conditions (depends on the problem).

### Approach:

- ▶ First determine all solutions that satisfy recurrence relation.
- ▶ Then pick the right one by analyzing boundary conditions.
- ▶ First consider the homogenous case.

## 6.3 The Characteristic Polynomial

### Observations:

- ▶ The solution  $T[1], T[2], T[3], \dots$  is completely determined by a set of **boundary conditions** that specify values for  $T[1], \dots, T[k]$ .
- ▶ In fact, any  $k$  consecutive values completely determine the solution.
- ▶  $k$  non-consecutive values might not be an appropriate set of boundary conditions (depends on the problem).

### Approach:

- ▶ First determine all solutions that satisfy recurrence relation.
- ▶ Then pick the right one by analyzing boundary conditions.
- ▶ First consider the homogenous case.

## 6.3 The Characteristic Polynomial

### Observations:

- ▶ The solution  $T[1], T[2], T[3], \dots$  is completely determined by a set of **boundary conditions** that specify values for  $T[1], \dots, T[k]$ .
- ▶ In fact, any  $k$  consecutive values completely determine the solution.
- ▶  $k$  non-consecutive values might not be an appropriate set of boundary conditions (depends on the problem).

### Approach:

- ▶ First determine all solutions that satisfy recurrence relation.
- ▶ Then pick the right one by analyzing boundary conditions.
- ▶ First consider the homogenous case.

## 6.3 The Characteristic Polynomial

### Observations:

- ▶ The solution  $T[1], T[2], T[3], \dots$  is completely determined by a set of **boundary conditions** that specify values for  $T[1], \dots, T[k]$ .
- ▶ In fact, any  $k$  consecutive values completely determine the solution.
- ▶  $k$  non-consecutive values might not be an appropriate set of boundary conditions (depends on the problem).

### Approach:

- ▶ First determine all solutions that satisfy recurrence relation.
- ▶ Then pick the right one by analyzing boundary conditions.
- ▶ First consider the homogenous case.

## 6.3 The Characteristic Polynomial

### Observations:

- ▶ The solution  $T[1], T[2], T[3], \dots$  is completely determined by a set of **boundary conditions** that specify values for  $T[1], \dots, T[k]$ .
- ▶ In fact, any  $k$  consecutive values completely determine the solution.
- ▶  $k$  non-consecutive values might not be an appropriate set of boundary conditions (depends on the problem).

### Approach:

- ▶ First determine all solutions that satisfy recurrence relation.
- ▶ Then pick the right one by analyzing boundary conditions.
- ▶ First consider the homogenous case.

## 6.3 The Characteristic Polynomial

### Observations:

- ▶ The solution  $T[1], T[2], T[3], \dots$  is completely determined by a set of **boundary conditions** that specify values for  $T[1], \dots, T[k]$ .
- ▶ In fact, any  $k$  consecutive values completely determine the solution.
- ▶  $k$  non-consecutive values might not be an appropriate set of boundary conditions (depends on the problem).

### Approach:

- ▶ First determine all solutions that satisfy recurrence relation.
- ▶ Then pick the right one by analyzing boundary conditions.
- ▶ First consider the homogenous case.

## 6.3 The Characteristic Polynomial

### Observations:

- ▶ The solution  $T[1], T[2], T[3], \dots$  is completely determined by a set of **boundary conditions** that specify values for  $T[1], \dots, T[k]$ .
- ▶ In fact, any  $k$  consecutive values completely determine the solution.
- ▶  $k$  non-consecutive values might not be an appropriate set of boundary conditions (depends on the problem).

### Approach:

- ▶ First determine all solutions that satisfy recurrence relation.
- ▶ Then pick the right one by analyzing boundary conditions.
- ▶ First consider the homogenous case.

# The Homogenous Case

The solution space

$$S = \left\{ \mathcal{T} = T[1], T[2], T[3], \dots \mid \mathcal{T} \text{ fulfills recurrence relation} \right\}$$

is a **vector space**. This means that if  $\mathcal{T}_1, \mathcal{T}_2 \in S$ , then also  $\alpha\mathcal{T}_1 + \beta\mathcal{T}_2 \in S$ , for arbitrary constants  $\alpha, \beta$ .

How do we find a non-trivial solution?

We guess that the solution is of the form  $\lambda^n$ ,  $\lambda \neq 0$ , and see what happens. In order for this guess to fulfill the recurrence we need

$$c_0\lambda^n + c_1\lambda^{n-1} + c_2 \cdot \lambda^{n-2} + \dots + c_k \cdot \lambda^{n-k} = 0$$

for all  $n \geq k$ .



# The Homogenous Case

The solution space

$$S = \left\{ \mathcal{T} = T[1], T[2], T[3], \dots \mid \mathcal{T} \text{ fulfills recurrence relation} \right\}$$

is a **vector space**. This means that if  $\mathcal{T}_1, \mathcal{T}_2 \in S$ , then also  $\alpha\mathcal{T}_1 + \beta\mathcal{T}_2 \in S$ , for arbitrary constants  $\alpha, \beta$ .

How do we find a non-trivial solution?

We guess that the solution is of the form  $\lambda^n$ ,  $\lambda \neq 0$ , and see what happens. In order for this guess to fulfill the recurrence we need

$$c_0\lambda^n + c_1\lambda^{n-1} + c_2 \cdot \lambda^{n-2} + \dots + c_k \cdot \lambda^{n-k} = 0$$

for all  $n \geq k$ .

# The Homogenous Case

The solution space

$$S = \left\{ \mathcal{T} = T[1], T[2], T[3], \dots \mid \mathcal{T} \text{ fulfills recurrence relation} \right\}$$

is a **vector space**. This means that if  $\mathcal{T}_1, \mathcal{T}_2 \in S$ , then also  $\alpha\mathcal{T}_1 + \beta\mathcal{T}_2 \in S$ , for arbitrary constants  $\alpha, \beta$ .

## How do we find a non-trivial solution?

We guess that the solution is of the form  $\lambda^n$ ,  $\lambda \neq 0$ , and see what happens. In order for this guess to fulfill the recurrence we need

$$c_0\lambda^n + c_1\lambda^{n-1} + c_2 \cdot \lambda^{n-2} + \dots + c_k \cdot \lambda^{n-k} = 0$$

for all  $n \geq k$ .

# The Homogenous Case

The solution space

$$S = \left\{ \mathcal{T} = T[1], T[2], T[3], \dots \mid \mathcal{T} \text{ fulfills recurrence relation} \right\}$$

is a **vector space**. This means that if  $\mathcal{T}_1, \mathcal{T}_2 \in S$ , then also  $\alpha\mathcal{T}_1 + \beta\mathcal{T}_2 \in S$ , for arbitrary constants  $\alpha, \beta$ .

**How do we find a non-trivial solution?**

We guess that the solution is of the form  $\lambda^n$ ,  $\lambda \neq 0$ , and see what happens. In order for this guess to fulfill the recurrence we need

$$c_0\lambda^n + c_1\lambda^{n-1} + c_2 \cdot \lambda^{n-2} + \dots + c_k \cdot \lambda^{n-k} = 0$$

for all  $n \geq k$ .

# The Homogenous Case

The solution space

$$S = \left\{ \mathcal{T} = T[1], T[2], T[3], \dots \mid \mathcal{T} \text{ fulfills recurrence relation} \right\}$$

is a **vector space**. This means that if  $\mathcal{T}_1, \mathcal{T}_2 \in S$ , then also  $\alpha\mathcal{T}_1 + \beta\mathcal{T}_2 \in S$ , for arbitrary constants  $\alpha, \beta$ .

**How do we find a non-trivial solution?**

We guess that the solution is of the form  $\lambda^n$ ,  $\lambda \neq 0$ , and see what happens. In order for this guess to fulfill the recurrence we need

$$c_0\lambda^n + c_1\lambda^{n-1} + c_2 \cdot \lambda^{n-2} + \dots + c_k \cdot \lambda^{n-k} = 0$$

for all  $n \geq k$ .

# The Homogenous Case

Dividing by  $\lambda^{n-k}$  gives that all these constraints are identical to

$$c_0\lambda^k + c_1\lambda^{k-1} + c_2 \cdot \lambda^{k-2} + \dots + c_k = 0$$

This means that if  $\lambda_i$  is a root (Nullstelle) of  $P[\lambda]$  then  $T[n] = \lambda_i^n$  is a solution to the recurrence relation.

Let  $\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_k$  be the  $k$  (complex) roots of  $P[\lambda]$ . Then, because of the vector space property

$$\alpha_1\lambda_1^n + \alpha_2\lambda_2^n + \dots + \alpha_k\lambda_k^n$$

is a solution for arbitrary values  $\alpha_i$ .

# The Homogenous Case

Dividing by  $\lambda^{n-k}$  gives that all these constraints are identical to

$$\underbrace{c_0\lambda^k + c_1\lambda^{k-1} + c_2 \cdot \lambda^{k-2} + \dots + c_k}_{\text{characteristic polynomial } P[\lambda]} = 0$$

This means that if  $\lambda_i$  is a root (Nullstelle) of  $P[\lambda]$  then  $T[n] = \lambda_i^n$  is a solution to the recurrence relation.

Let  $\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_k$  be the  $k$  (complex) roots of  $P[\lambda]$ . Then, because of the vector space property

$$\alpha_1\lambda_1^n + \alpha_2\lambda_2^n + \dots + \alpha_k\lambda_k^n$$

is a solution for arbitrary values  $\alpha_i$ .

# The Homogenous Case

Dividing by  $\lambda^{n-k}$  gives that all these constraints are identical to

$$\underbrace{c_0\lambda^k + c_1\lambda^{k-1} + c_2 \cdot \lambda^{k-2} + \dots + c_k}_{\text{characteristic polynomial } P[\lambda]} = 0$$

This means that if  $\lambda_i$  is a root (**Nullstelle**) of  $P[\lambda]$  then  $T[n] = \lambda_i^n$  is a solution to the recurrence relation.

Let  $\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_k$  be the  $k$  (complex) roots of  $P[\lambda]$ . Then, because of the vector space property

$$\alpha_1\lambda_1^n + \alpha_2\lambda_2^n + \dots + \alpha_k\lambda_k^n$$

is a solution for arbitrary values  $\alpha_i$ .

# The Homogenous Case

Dividing by  $\lambda^{n-k}$  gives that all these constraints are identical to

$$\underbrace{c_0\lambda^k + c_1\lambda^{k-1} + c_2 \cdot \lambda^{k-2} + \dots + c_k}_{\text{characteristic polynomial } P[\lambda]} = 0$$

This means that if  $\lambda_i$  is a root (**Nullstelle**) of  $P[\lambda]$  then  $T[n] = \lambda_i^n$  is a solution to the recurrence relation.

Let  $\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_k$  be the  $k$  (complex) roots of  $P[\lambda]$ . Then, because of the vector space property

$$\alpha_1\lambda_1^n + \alpha_2\lambda_2^n + \dots + \alpha_k\lambda_k^n$$

is a solution for arbitrary values  $\alpha_i$ .



# The Homogenous Case

## Lemma 5

Assume that the characteristic polynomial has  $k$  *distinct* roots  $\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_k$ . Then *all* solutions to the recurrence relation are of the form

$$\alpha_1 \lambda_1^n + \alpha_2 \lambda_2^n + \dots + \alpha_k \lambda_k^n .$$

## Proof.

There is one solution for every possible choice of boundary conditions for  $T[1], \dots, T[k]$ .

We show that the above set of solutions contains one solution for every choice of boundary conditions.

# The Homogenous Case

## Lemma 5

Assume that the characteristic polynomial has  $k$  *distinct* roots  $\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_k$ . Then *all* solutions to the recurrence relation are of the form

$$\alpha_1 \lambda_1^n + \alpha_2 \lambda_2^n + \dots + \alpha_k \lambda_k^n .$$

## Proof.

There is one solution for every possible choice of boundary conditions for  $T[1], \dots, T[k]$ .

We show that the above set of solutions contains one solution for every choice of boundary conditions.

# The Homogenous Case

## Lemma 5

Assume that the characteristic polynomial has  $k$  *distinct* roots  $\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_k$ . Then *all* solutions to the recurrence relation are of the form

$$\alpha_1 \lambda_1^n + \alpha_2 \lambda_2^n + \dots + \alpha_k \lambda_k^n .$$

## Proof.

There is one solution for every possible choice of boundary conditions for  $T[1], \dots, T[k]$ .

We show that the above set of solutions contains one solution for every choice of boundary conditions.

# The Homogenous Case

## Proof (cont.).

Suppose I am given boundary conditions  $T[i]$  and I want to see whether I can choose the  $\alpha'_i$ 's such that these conditions are met:

# The Homogenous Case

## Proof (cont.).

Suppose I am given boundary conditions  $T[i]$  and I want to see whether I can choose the  $\alpha'_i$ 's such that these conditions are met:

$$\alpha_1 \cdot \lambda_1 + \alpha_2 \cdot \lambda_2 + \dots + \alpha_k \cdot \lambda_k = T[1]$$

# The Homogenous Case

## Proof (cont.).

Suppose I am given boundary conditions  $T[i]$  and I want to see whether I can choose the  $\alpha'_i$ 's such that these conditions are met:

$$\begin{aligned}\alpha_1 \cdot \lambda_1 + \alpha_2 \cdot \lambda_2 + \dots + \alpha_k \cdot \lambda_k &= T[1] \\ \alpha_1 \cdot \lambda_1^2 + \alpha_2 \cdot \lambda_2^2 + \dots + \alpha_k \cdot \lambda_k^2 &= T[2]\end{aligned}$$

# The Homogenous Case

## Proof (cont.).

Suppose I am given boundary conditions  $T[i]$  and I want to see whether I can choose the  $\alpha'_i$ 's such that these conditions are met:

$$\begin{aligned}\alpha_1 \cdot \lambda_1 + \alpha_2 \cdot \lambda_2 + \dots + \alpha_k \cdot \lambda_k &= T[1] \\ \alpha_1 \cdot \lambda_1^2 + \alpha_2 \cdot \lambda_2^2 + \dots + \alpha_k \cdot \lambda_k^2 &= T[2] \\ &\vdots\end{aligned}$$

# The Homogenous Case

## Proof (cont.).

Suppose I am given boundary conditions  $T[i]$  and I want to see whether I can choose the  $\alpha'_i$ 's such that these conditions are met:

$$\begin{aligned}\alpha_1 \cdot \lambda_1 + \alpha_2 \cdot \lambda_2 + \cdots + \alpha_k \cdot \lambda_k &= T[1] \\ \alpha_1 \cdot \lambda_1^2 + \alpha_2 \cdot \lambda_2^2 + \cdots + \alpha_k \cdot \lambda_k^2 &= T[2] \\ &\vdots \\ \alpha_1 \cdot \lambda_1^k + \alpha_2 \cdot \lambda_2^k + \cdots + \alpha_k \cdot \lambda_k^k &= T[k]\end{aligned}$$



# The Homogenous Case

## Proof (cont.).

Suppose I am given boundary conditions  $T[i]$  and I want to see whether I can choose the  $\alpha'_i$ s such that these conditions are met:

$$\begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & \lambda_2 & \cdots & \lambda_k \\ \lambda_1^2 & \lambda_2^2 & \cdots & \lambda_k^2 \\ & & \vdots & \\ \lambda_1^k & \lambda_2^k & \cdots & \lambda_k^k \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_1 \\ \alpha_2 \\ \vdots \\ \alpha_k \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} T[1] \\ T[2] \\ \vdots \\ T[k] \end{pmatrix}$$

# The Homogenous Case

## Proof (cont.).

Suppose I am given boundary conditions  $T[i]$  and I want to see whether I can choose the  $\alpha'_i$ 's such that these conditions are met:

$$\begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & \lambda_2 & \cdots & \lambda_k \\ \lambda_1^2 & \lambda_2^2 & \cdots & \lambda_k^2 \\ & & \vdots & \\ \lambda_1^k & \lambda_2^k & \cdots & \lambda_k^k \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_1 \\ \alpha_2 \\ \vdots \\ \alpha_k \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} T[1] \\ T[2] \\ \vdots \\ T[k] \end{pmatrix}$$

We show that the column vectors are linearly independent. Then the above equation has a solution.

$$\begin{vmatrix} \lambda_1 & \lambda_2 & \cdots & \lambda_{k-1} & \lambda_k \\ \lambda_1^2 & \lambda_2^2 & \cdots & \lambda_{k-1}^2 & \lambda_k^2 \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots & \vdots \\ \lambda_1^k & \lambda_2^k & \cdots & \lambda_{k-1}^k & \lambda_k^k \end{vmatrix} =$$

$$\begin{vmatrix} \lambda_1 & \lambda_2 & \cdots & \lambda_{k-1} & \lambda_k \\ \lambda_1^2 & \lambda_2^2 & \cdots & \lambda_{k-1}^2 & \lambda_k^2 \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots & \vdots \\ \lambda_1^k & \lambda_2^k & \cdots & \lambda_{k-1}^k & \lambda_k^k \end{vmatrix} = \prod_{i=1}^k \lambda_i \cdot \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 1 & \cdots & 1 & 1 \\ \lambda_1 & \lambda_2 & \cdots & \lambda_{k-1} & \lambda_k \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots & \vdots \\ \lambda_1^{k-1} & \lambda_2^{k-1} & \cdots & \lambda_{k-1}^{k-1} & \lambda_k^{k-1} \end{vmatrix}$$

$$\begin{vmatrix} \lambda_1 & \lambda_2 & \cdots & \lambda_{k-1} & \lambda_k \\ \lambda_1^2 & \lambda_2^2 & \cdots & \lambda_{k-1}^2 & \lambda_k^2 \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots & \vdots \\ \lambda_1^k & \lambda_2^k & \cdots & \lambda_{k-1}^k & \lambda_k^k \end{vmatrix} = \prod_{i=1}^k \lambda_i \cdot \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 1 & \cdots & 1 & 1 \\ \lambda_1 & \lambda_2 & \cdots & \lambda_{k-1} & \lambda_k \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots & \vdots \\ \lambda_1^{k-1} & \lambda_2^{k-1} & \cdots & \lambda_{k-1}^{k-1} & \lambda_k^{k-1} \end{vmatrix} \\
= \prod_{i=1}^k \lambda_i \cdot \begin{vmatrix} 1 & \lambda_1 & \cdots & \lambda_1^{k-2} & \lambda_1^{k-1} \\ 1 & \lambda_2 & \cdots & \lambda_2^{k-2} & \lambda_2^{k-1} \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots & \vdots \\ 1 & \lambda_k & \cdots & \lambda_k^{k-2} & \lambda_k^{k-1} \end{vmatrix}$$

# Computing the Determinant

$$\begin{vmatrix} 1 & \lambda_1 & \cdots & \lambda_1^{k-2} & \lambda_1^{k-1} \\ 1 & \lambda_2 & \cdots & \lambda_2^{k-2} & \lambda_2^{k-1} \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots & \vdots \\ 1 & \lambda_k & \cdots & \lambda_k^{k-2} & \lambda_k^{k-1} \end{vmatrix} =$$

# Computing the Determinant

$$\begin{vmatrix} 1 & \lambda_1 & \cdots & \lambda_1^{k-2} & \lambda_1^{k-1} \\ 1 & \lambda_2 & \cdots & \lambda_2^{k-2} & \lambda_2^{k-1} \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots & \vdots \\ 1 & \lambda_k & \cdots & \lambda_k^{k-2} & \lambda_k^{k-1} \end{vmatrix} =$$

$$\begin{vmatrix} 1 & \lambda_1 - \lambda_1 \cdot 1 & \cdots & \lambda_1^{k-2} - \lambda_1 \cdot \lambda_1^{k-3} & \lambda_1^{k-1} - \lambda_1 \cdot \lambda_1^{k-2} \\ 1 & \lambda_2 - \lambda_1 \cdot 1 & \cdots & \lambda_2^{k-2} - \lambda_1 \cdot \lambda_2^{k-3} & \lambda_2^{k-1} - \lambda_1 \cdot \lambda_2^{k-2} \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots & \vdots \\ 1 & \lambda_k - \lambda_1 \cdot 1 & \cdots & \lambda_k^{k-2} - \lambda_1 \cdot \lambda_k^{k-3} & \lambda_k^{k-1} - \lambda_1 \cdot \lambda_k^{k-2} \end{vmatrix}$$

# Computing the Determinant

$$\begin{vmatrix} 1 & \lambda_1 - \lambda_1 \cdot 1 & \cdots & \lambda_1^{k-2} - \lambda_1 \cdot \lambda_1^{k-3} & \lambda_1^{k-1} - \lambda_1 \cdot \lambda_1^{k-2} \\ 1 & \lambda_2 - \lambda_1 \cdot 1 & \cdots & \lambda_2^{k-2} - \lambda_1 \cdot \lambda_2^{k-3} & \lambda_2^{k-1} - \lambda_1 \cdot \lambda_2^{k-2} \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots & \vdots \\ 1 & \lambda_k - \lambda_1 \cdot 1 & \cdots & \lambda_k^{k-2} - \lambda_1 \cdot \lambda_k^{k-3} & \lambda_k^{k-1} - \lambda_1 \cdot \lambda_k^{k-2} \end{vmatrix} =$$



# Computing the Determinant

$$\begin{vmatrix} 1 & \lambda_1 - \lambda_1 \cdot 1 & \cdots & \lambda_1^{k-2} - \lambda_1 \cdot \lambda_1^{k-3} & \lambda_1^{k-1} - \lambda_1 \cdot \lambda_1^{k-2} \\ 1 & \lambda_2 - \lambda_1 \cdot 1 & \cdots & \lambda_2^{k-2} - \lambda_1 \cdot \lambda_2^{k-3} & \lambda_2^{k-1} - \lambda_1 \cdot \lambda_2^{k-2} \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots & \vdots \\ 1 & \lambda_k - \lambda_1 \cdot 1 & \cdots & \lambda_k^{k-2} - \lambda_1 \cdot \lambda_k^{k-3} & \lambda_k^{k-1} - \lambda_1 \cdot \lambda_k^{k-2} \end{vmatrix} =$$

$$\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & (\lambda_2 - \lambda_1) \cdot 1 & \cdots & (\lambda_2 - \lambda_1) \cdot \lambda_2^{k-3} & (\lambda_2 - \lambda_1) \cdot \lambda_2^{k-2} \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots & \vdots \\ 1 & (\lambda_k - \lambda_1) \cdot 1 & \cdots & (\lambda_k - \lambda_1) \cdot \lambda_k^{k-3} & (\lambda_k - \lambda_1) \cdot \lambda_k^{k-2} \end{vmatrix}$$

# Computing the Determinant

$$\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & (\lambda_2 - \lambda_1) \cdot 1 & \cdots & (\lambda_2 - \lambda_1) \cdot \lambda_2^{k-3} & (\lambda_2 - \lambda_1) \cdot \lambda_2^{k-2} \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots & \vdots \\ 1 & (\lambda_k - \lambda_1) \cdot 1 & \cdots & (\lambda_k - \lambda_1) \cdot \lambda_k^{k-3} & (\lambda_k - \lambda_1) \cdot \lambda_k^{k-2} \end{vmatrix} =$$

# Computing the Determinant

$$\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & (\lambda_2 - \lambda_1) \cdot 1 & \cdots & (\lambda_2 - \lambda_1) \cdot \lambda_2^{k-3} & (\lambda_2 - \lambda_1) \cdot \lambda_2^{k-2} \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots & \vdots \\ 1 & (\lambda_k - \lambda_1) \cdot 1 & \cdots & (\lambda_k - \lambda_1) \cdot \lambda_k^{k-3} & (\lambda_k - \lambda_1) \cdot \lambda_k^{k-2} \end{vmatrix} =$$

$$\prod_{i=2}^k (\lambda_i - \lambda_1) \cdot \begin{vmatrix} 1 & \lambda_2 & \cdots & \lambda_2^{k-3} & \lambda_2^{k-2} \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots & \vdots \\ 1 & \lambda_k & \cdots & \lambda_k^{k-3} & \lambda_k^{k-2} \end{vmatrix}$$

# Computing the Determinant

Repeating the above steps gives:

$$\begin{vmatrix} \lambda_1 & \lambda_2 & \cdots & \lambda_{k-1} & \lambda_k \\ \lambda_1^2 & \lambda_2^2 & \cdots & \lambda_{k-1}^2 & \lambda_k^2 \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots & \vdots \\ \lambda_1^k & \lambda_2^k & \cdots & \lambda_{k-1}^k & \lambda_k^k \end{vmatrix} = \prod_{i=1}^k \lambda_i \cdot \prod_{i>\ell} (\lambda_i - \lambda_\ell)$$

Hence, if all  $\lambda_i$ 's are different, then the determinant is non-zero.

# The Homogeneous Case

## What happens if the roots are not all distinct?

Suppose we have a root  $\lambda_i$  with multiplicity (Vielfachheit) at least 2. Then not only is  $\lambda_i^n$  a solution to the recurrence but also  $n\lambda_i^{n-1}$ .

To see this consider the polynomial

$$P[\lambda] \cdot \lambda^{n-k} = c_0\lambda^n + c_1\lambda^{n-1} + c_2\lambda^{n-2} + \dots + c_k\lambda^{n-k}$$

Since  $\lambda_i$  is a root we can write this as  $Q[\lambda] \cdot (\lambda - \lambda_i)^2$ .

Calculating the derivative gives a polynomial that still has root  $\lambda_i$ .

# The Homogeneous Case

## What happens if the roots are not all distinct?

Suppose we have a root  $\lambda_i$  with multiplicity (**Vielfachheit**) at least 2. Then not only is  $\lambda_i^n$  a solution to the recurrence but also  $n\lambda_i^{n-1}$ .

To see this consider the polynomial

$$P[\lambda] \cdot \lambda^{n-k} = c_0\lambda^n + c_1\lambda^{n-1} + c_2\lambda^{n-2} + \dots + c_k\lambda^{n-k}$$

Since  $\lambda_i$  is a root we can write this as  $Q[\lambda] \cdot (\lambda - \lambda_i)^2$ .

Calculating the derivative gives a polynomial that still has root  $\lambda_i$ .

# The Homogeneous Case

## What happens if the roots are not all distinct?

Suppose we have a root  $\lambda_i$  with multiplicity (**Vielfachheit**) at least 2. Then not only is  $\lambda_i^n$  a solution to the recurrence but also  $n\lambda_i^{n-1}$ .

To see this consider the polynomial

$$P[\lambda] \cdot \lambda^{n-k} = c_0\lambda^n + c_1\lambda^{n-1} + c_2\lambda^{n-2} + \dots + c_k\lambda^{n-k}$$

Since  $\lambda_i$  is a root we can write this as  $Q[\lambda] \cdot (\lambda - \lambda_i)^2$ .

Calculating the derivative gives a polynomial that still has root  $\lambda_i$ .

# The Homogeneous Case

## What happens if the roots are not all distinct?

Suppose we have a root  $\lambda_i$  with multiplicity (**Vielfachheit**) at least 2. Then not only is  $\lambda_i^n$  a solution to the recurrence but also  $n\lambda_i^{n-1}$ .

To see this consider the polynomial

$$P[\lambda] \cdot \lambda^{n-k} = c_0\lambda^n + c_1\lambda^{n-1} + c_2\lambda^{n-2} + \dots + c_k\lambda^{n-k}$$

Since  $\lambda_i$  is a root we can write this as  $Q[\lambda] \cdot (\lambda - \lambda_i)^2$ .

Calculating the derivative gives a polynomial that still has root  $\lambda_i$ .



This means

$$c_0 n \lambda_i^{n-1} + c_1 (n-1) \lambda_i^{n-2} + \dots + c_k (n-k) \lambda_i^{n-k-1} = 0$$

Hence,

$$\underbrace{c_0 n \lambda_i^n}_{T[n]} + \underbrace{c_1 (n-1) \lambda_i^{n-1}}_{T[n-1]} + \dots + \underbrace{c_k (n-k) \lambda_i^{n-k}}_{T[n-k]} = 0$$

This means

$$c_0 n \lambda_i^{n-1} + c_1 (n-1) \lambda_i^{n-2} + \dots + c_k (n-k) \lambda_i^{n-k-1} = 0$$

Hence,

$$\underbrace{c_0 n \lambda_i^n}_{T[n]} + \underbrace{c_1 (n-1) \lambda_i^{n-1}}_{T[n-1]} + \dots + \underbrace{c_k (n-k) \lambda_i^{n-k}}_{T[n-k]} = 0$$

This means

$$c_0 n \lambda_i^{n-1} + c_1 (n-1) \lambda_i^{n-2} + \dots + c_k (n-k) \lambda_i^{n-k-1} = 0$$

Hence,

$$\underbrace{c_0 n \lambda_i^n}_{T[n]} + \underbrace{c_1 (n-1) \lambda_i^{n-1}}_{T[n-1]} + \dots + \underbrace{c_k (n-k) \lambda_i^{n-k}}_{T[n-k]} = 0$$

# The Homogeneous Case

Suppose  $\lambda_i$  has multiplicity  $j$ . We know that

$$c_0 n \lambda_i^n + c_1 (n-1) \lambda_i^{n-1} + \dots + c_k (n-k) \lambda_i^{n-k} = 0$$

(after taking the derivative; multiplying with  $\lambda$ ; plugging in  $\lambda_i$ )

Doing this again gives

$$c_0 n^2 \lambda_i^n + c_1 (n-1)^2 \lambda_i^{n-1} + \dots + c_k (n-k)^2 \lambda_i^{n-k} = 0$$

We can continue  $j-1$  times.

Hence,  $n^\ell \lambda_i^n$  is a solution for  $\ell \in 0, \dots, j-1$ .

# The Homogeneous Case

Suppose  $\lambda_i$  has multiplicity  $j$ . We know that

$$c_0 n \lambda_i^n + c_1 (n-1) \lambda_i^{n-1} + \dots + c_k (n-k) \lambda_i^{n-k} = 0$$

(after taking the derivative; multiplying with  $\lambda$ ; plugging in  $\lambda_i$ )

Doing this again gives

$$c_0 n^2 \lambda_i^n + c_1 (n-1)^2 \lambda_i^{n-1} + \dots + c_k (n-k)^2 \lambda_i^{n-k} = 0$$

We can continue  $j-1$  times.

Hence,  $n^\ell \lambda_i^n$  is a solution for  $\ell \in 0, \dots, j-1$ .

# The Homogeneous Case

Suppose  $\lambda_i$  has multiplicity  $j$ . We know that

$$c_0 n \lambda_i^n + c_1 (n-1) \lambda_i^{n-1} + \dots + c_k (n-k) \lambda_i^{n-k} = 0$$

(after taking the derivative; multiplying with  $\lambda$ ; plugging in  $\lambda_i$ )

Doing this again gives

$$c_0 n^2 \lambda_i^n + c_1 (n-1)^2 \lambda_i^{n-1} + \dots + c_k (n-k)^2 \lambda_i^{n-k} = 0$$

We can continue  $j-1$  times.

Hence,  $n^\ell \lambda_i^n$  is a solution for  $\ell \in 0, \dots, j-1$ .

# The Homogeneous Case

Suppose  $\lambda_i$  has multiplicity  $j$ . We know that

$$c_0 n \lambda_i^n + c_1 (n-1) \lambda_i^{n-1} + \dots + c_k (n-k) \lambda_i^{n-k} = 0$$

(after taking the derivative; multiplying with  $\lambda$ ; plugging in  $\lambda_i$ )

Doing this again gives

$$c_0 n^2 \lambda_i^n + c_1 (n-1)^2 \lambda_i^{n-1} + \dots + c_k (n-k)^2 \lambda_i^{n-k} = 0$$

We can continue  $j-1$  times.

Hence,  $n^\ell \lambda_i^n$  is a solution for  $\ell \in 0, \dots, j-1$ .

# The Homogeneous Case

Suppose  $\lambda_i$  has multiplicity  $j$ . We know that

$$c_0 n \lambda_i^n + c_1 (n-1) \lambda_i^{n-1} + \dots + c_k (n-k) \lambda_i^{n-k} = 0$$

(after taking the derivative; multiplying with  $\lambda$ ; plugging in  $\lambda_i$ )

Doing this again gives

$$c_0 n^2 \lambda_i^n + c_1 (n-1)^2 \lambda_i^{n-1} + \dots + c_k (n-k)^2 \lambda_i^{n-k} = 0$$

We can continue  $j - 1$  times.

Hence,  $n^\ell \lambda_i^n$  is a solution for  $\ell \in 0, \dots, j - 1$ .



# The Homogeneous Case

Suppose  $\lambda_i$  has multiplicity  $j$ . We know that

$$c_0 n \lambda_i^n + c_1 (n-1) \lambda_i^{n-1} + \dots + c_k (n-k) \lambda_i^{n-k} = 0$$

(after taking the derivative; multiplying with  $\lambda$ ; plugging in  $\lambda_i$ )

Doing this again gives

$$c_0 n^2 \lambda_i^n + c_1 (n-1)^2 \lambda_i^{n-1} + \dots + c_k (n-k)^2 \lambda_i^{n-k} = 0$$

We can continue  $j-1$  times.

Hence,  $n^\ell \lambda_i^n$  is a solution for  $\ell \in 0, \dots, j-1$ .

# The Homogeneous Case

## Lemma 6

Let  $P[\lambda]$  denote the characteristic polynomial to the recurrence

$$c_0T[n] + c_1T[n - 1] + \dots + c_kT[n - k] = 0$$

Let  $\lambda_i$ ,  $i = 1, \dots, m$  be the (complex) roots of  $P[\lambda]$  with multiplicities  $\ell_i$ . Then the general solution to the recurrence is given by

$$T[n] = \sum_{i=1}^m \sum_{j=0}^{\ell_i-1} \alpha_{ij} \cdot (n^j \lambda_i^n) .$$

The full proof is omitted. We have only shown that any choice of  $\alpha_{ij}$ 's is a solution to the recurrence.

## Example: Fibonacci Sequence

$$T[0] = 0$$

$$T[1] = 1$$

$$T[n] = T[n - 1] + T[n - 2] \text{ for } n \geq 2$$

The characteristic polynomial is

$$\lambda^2 - \lambda - 1$$

Finding the roots, gives

$$\lambda_{1/2} = \frac{1}{2} \pm \sqrt{\frac{1}{4} + 1} = \frac{1}{2} (1 \pm \sqrt{5})$$

## Example: Fibonacci Sequence

$$T[0] = 0$$

$$T[1] = 1$$

$$T[n] = T[n - 1] + T[n - 2] \text{ for } n \geq 2$$

The characteristic polynomial is

$$\lambda^2 - \lambda - 1$$

Finding the roots, gives

$$\lambda_{1/2} = \frac{1}{2} \pm \sqrt{\frac{1}{4} + 1} = \frac{1}{2} (1 \pm \sqrt{5})$$

## Example: Fibonacci Sequence

$$T[0] = 0$$

$$T[1] = 1$$

$$T[n] = T[n - 1] + T[n - 2] \text{ for } n \geq 2$$

The characteristic polynomial is

$$\lambda^2 - \lambda - 1$$

Finding the roots, gives

$$\lambda_{1/2} = \frac{1}{2} \pm \sqrt{\frac{1}{4} + 1} = \frac{1}{2} (1 \pm \sqrt{5})$$

## Example: Fibonacci Sequence

Hence, the solution is of the form

$$\alpha \left( \frac{1 + \sqrt{5}}{2} \right)^n + \beta \left( \frac{1 - \sqrt{5}}{2} \right)^n$$

## Example: Fibonacci Sequence

Hence, the solution is of the form

$$\alpha \left( \frac{1 + \sqrt{5}}{2} \right)^n + \beta \left( \frac{1 - \sqrt{5}}{2} \right)^n$$

$T[0] = 0$  gives  $\alpha + \beta = 0$ .

## Example: Fibonacci Sequence

Hence, the solution is of the form

$$\alpha \left( \frac{1 + \sqrt{5}}{2} \right)^n + \beta \left( \frac{1 - \sqrt{5}}{2} \right)^n$$

$T[0] = 0$  gives  $\alpha + \beta = 0$ .

$T[1] = 1$  gives

$$\alpha \left( \frac{1 + \sqrt{5}}{2} \right) + \beta \left( \frac{1 - \sqrt{5}}{2} \right) = 1$$



## Example: Fibonacci Sequence

Hence, the solution is of the form

$$\alpha \left( \frac{1 + \sqrt{5}}{2} \right)^n + \beta \left( \frac{1 - \sqrt{5}}{2} \right)^n$$

$T[0] = 0$  gives  $\alpha + \beta = 0$ .

$T[1] = 1$  gives

$$\alpha \left( \frac{1 + \sqrt{5}}{2} \right) + \beta \left( \frac{1 - \sqrt{5}}{2} \right) = 1 \implies \alpha - \beta = \frac{2}{\sqrt{5}}$$

## Example: Fibonacci Sequence

Hence, the solution is

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{5}} \left[ \left( \frac{1 + \sqrt{5}}{2} \right)^n - \left( \frac{1 - \sqrt{5}}{2} \right)^n \right]$$

# The Inhomogeneous Case

Consider the recurrence relation:

$$c_0T(n) + c_1T(n - 1) + c_2T(n - 2) + \cdots + c_kT(n - k) = f(n)$$

with  $f(n) \neq 0$ .

While we have a fairly general technique for solving **homogeneous**, linear recurrence relations the inhomogeneous case is different.

# The Inhomogeneous Case

The general solution of the recurrence relation is

$$T(n) = T_h(n) + T_p(n) ,$$

where  $T_h$  is **any** solution to the homogeneous equation, and  $T_p$  is **one** particular solution to the inhomogeneous equation.

There is no general method to find a particular solution.

# The Inhomogeneous Case

The general solution of the recurrence relation is

$$T(n) = T_h(n) + T_p(n) ,$$

where  $T_h$  is **any** solution to the homogeneous equation, and  $T_p$  is **one** particular solution to the inhomogeneous equation.

There is no general method to find a particular solution.

# The Inhomogeneous Case

Example:

$$T[n] = T[n - 1] + 1 \quad T[0] = 1$$

Then,

$$T[n - 1] = T[n - 2] + 1 \quad (n \geq 2)$$

Subtracting the first from the second equation gives,

$$T[n] - T[n - 1] = T[n - 1] - T[n - 2] \quad (n \geq 2)$$

or

$$T[n] = 2T[n - 1] - T[n - 2] \quad (n \geq 2)$$

I get a completely determined recurrence if I add  $T[0] = 1$  and  $T[1] = 2$ .

# The Inhomogeneous Case

Example:

$$T[n] = T[n - 1] + 1 \quad T[0] = 1$$

Then,

$$T[n - 1] = T[n - 2] + 1 \quad (n \geq 2)$$

Subtracting the first from the second equation gives,

$$T[n] - T[n - 1] = T[n - 1] - T[n - 2] \quad (n \geq 2)$$

or

$$T[n] = 2T[n - 1] - T[n - 2] \quad (n \geq 2)$$

I get a completely determined recurrence if I add  $T[0] = 1$  and  $T[1] = 2$ .

# The Inhomogeneous Case

Example:

$$T[n] = T[n - 1] + 1 \quad T[0] = 1$$

Then,

$$T[n - 1] = T[n - 2] + 1 \quad (n \geq 2)$$

Subtracting the first from the second equation gives,

$$T[n] - T[n - 1] = T[n - 1] - T[n - 2] \quad (n \geq 2)$$

or

$$T[n] = 2T[n - 1] - T[n - 2] \quad (n \geq 2)$$

I get a completely determined recurrence if I add  $T[0] = 1$  and  $T[1] = 2$ .



# The Inhomogeneous Case

Example:

$$T[n] = T[n - 1] + 1 \quad T[0] = 1$$

Then,

$$T[n - 1] = T[n - 2] + 1 \quad (n \geq 2)$$

Subtracting the first from the second equation gives,

$$T[n] - T[n - 1] = T[n - 1] - T[n - 2] \quad (n \geq 2)$$

or

$$T[n] = 2T[n - 1] - T[n - 2] \quad (n \geq 2)$$

I get a completely determined recurrence if I add  $T[0] = 1$  and  $T[1] = 2$ .

# The Inhomogeneous Case

Example:

$$T[n] = T[n - 1] + 1 \quad T[0] = 1$$

Then,

$$T[n - 1] = T[n - 2] + 1 \quad (n \geq 2)$$

Subtracting the first from the second equation gives,

$$T[n] - T[n - 1] = T[n - 1] - T[n - 2] \quad (n \geq 2)$$

or

$$T[n] = 2T[n - 1] - T[n - 2] \quad (n \geq 2)$$

I get a completely determined recurrence if I add  $T[0] = 1$  and  $T[1] = 2$ .

# The Inhomogeneous Case

**Example:** Characteristic polynomial:

$$\lambda^2 - 2\lambda + 1 = 0$$

# The Inhomogeneous Case

**Example:** Characteristic polynomial:

$$\underbrace{\lambda^2 - 2\lambda + 1}_{(\lambda-1)^2} = 0$$

# The Inhomogeneous Case

**Example:** Characteristic polynomial:

$$\underbrace{\lambda^2 - 2\lambda + 1}_{(\lambda-1)^2} = 0$$

Then the solution is of the form

$$T[n] = \alpha 1^n + \beta n 1^n = \alpha + \beta n$$

# The Inhomogeneous Case

**Example:** Characteristic polynomial:

$$\underbrace{\lambda^2 - 2\lambda + 1}_{(\lambda-1)^2} = 0$$

Then the solution is of the form

$$T[n] = \alpha 1^n + \beta n 1^n = \alpha + \beta n$$

$T[0] = 1$  gives  $\alpha = 1$ .

# The Inhomogeneous Case

**Example:** Characteristic polynomial:

$$\underbrace{\lambda^2 - 2\lambda + 1}_{(\lambda-1)^2} = 0$$

Then the solution is of the form

$$T[n] = \alpha 1^n + \beta n 1^n = \alpha + \beta n$$

$T[0] = 1$  gives  $\alpha = 1$ .

$T[1] = 2$  gives  $1 + \beta = 2 \Rightarrow \beta = 1$ .

# The Inhomogeneous Case

If  $f(n)$  is a polynomial of degree  $r$  this method can be applied  $r + 1$  times to obtain a homogeneous equation:

$$T[n] = T[n - 1] + n^2$$

Shift:

$$T[n - 1] = T[n - 2] + (n - 1)^2$$

Difference:

$$T[n] - T[n - 1] = T[n - 1] - T[n - 2] + 2n - 1$$

$$T[n] = 2T[n - 1] - T[n - 2] + 2n - 1$$



# The Inhomogeneous Case

If  $f(n)$  is a polynomial of degree  $r$  this method can be applied  $r + 1$  times to obtain a homogeneous equation:

$$T[n] = T[n - 1] + n^2$$

Shift:

$$T[n - 1] = T[n - 2] + (n - 1)^2$$

Difference:

$$T[n] - T[n - 1] = T[n - 1] - T[n - 2] + 2n - 1$$

$$T[n] = 2T[n - 1] - T[n - 2] + 2n - 1$$

## The Inhomogeneous Case

If  $f(n)$  is a polynomial of degree  $r$  this method can be applied  $r + 1$  times to obtain a homogeneous equation:

$$T[n] = T[n - 1] + n^2$$

Shift:

$$T[n - 1] = T[n - 2] + (n - 1)^2 = T[n - 2] + n^2 - 2n + 1$$

Difference:

$$T[n] - T[n - 1] = T[n - 1] - T[n - 2] + 2n - 1$$

$$T[n] = 2T[n - 1] - T[n - 2] + 2n - 1$$

## The Inhomogeneous Case

If  $f(n)$  is a polynomial of degree  $r$  this method can be applied  $r + 1$  times to obtain a homogeneous equation:

$$T[n] = T[n - 1] + n^2$$

Shift:

$$T[n - 1] = T[n - 2] + (n - 1)^2 = T[n - 2] + n^2 - 2n + 1$$

Difference:

$$T[n] - T[n - 1] = T[n - 1] - T[n - 2] + 2n - 1$$

$$T[n] = 2T[n - 1] - T[n - 2] + 2n - 1$$

## The Inhomogeneous Case

If  $f(n)$  is a polynomial of degree  $r$  this method can be applied  $r + 1$  times to obtain a homogeneous equation:

$$T[n] = T[n - 1] + n^2$$

Shift:

$$T[n - 1] = T[n - 2] + (n - 1)^2 = T[n - 2] + n^2 - 2n + 1$$

Difference:

$$T[n] - T[n - 1] = T[n - 1] - T[n - 2] + 2n - 1$$

$$T[n] = 2T[n - 1] - T[n - 2] + 2n - 1$$

## The Inhomogeneous Case

If  $f(n)$  is a polynomial of degree  $r$  this method can be applied  $r + 1$  times to obtain a homogeneous equation:

$$T[n] = T[n - 1] + n^2$$

Shift:

$$T[n - 1] = T[n - 2] + (n - 1)^2 = T[n - 2] + n^2 - 2n + 1$$

Difference:

$$T[n] - T[n - 1] = T[n - 1] - T[n - 2] + 2n - 1$$

$$T[n] = 2T[n - 1] - T[n - 2] + 2n - 1$$

$$T[n] = 2T[n - 1] - T[n - 2] + 2n - 1$$

$$T[n] = 2T[n - 1] - T[n - 2] + 2n - 1$$

Shift:

$$T[n - 1] = 2T[n - 2] - T[n - 3] + 2(n - 1) - 1$$

$$T[n] = 2T[n - 1] - T[n - 2] + 2n - 1$$

Shift:

$$\begin{aligned} T[n - 1] &= 2T[n - 2] - T[n - 3] + 2(n - 1) - 1 \\ &= 2T[n - 2] - T[n - 3] + 2n - 3 \end{aligned}$$



$$T[n] = 2T[n - 1] - T[n - 2] + 2n - 1$$

Shift:

$$\begin{aligned}T[n - 1] &= 2T[n - 2] - T[n - 3] + 2(n - 1) - 1 \\ &= 2T[n - 2] - T[n - 3] + 2n - 3\end{aligned}$$

Difference:

$$\begin{aligned}T[n] - T[n - 1] &= 2T[n - 1] - T[n - 2] + 2n - 1 \\ &\quad - 2T[n - 2] + T[n - 3] - 2n + 3\end{aligned}$$

$$T[n] = 2T[n - 1] - T[n - 2] + 2n - 1$$

Shift:

$$\begin{aligned}T[n - 1] &= 2T[n - 2] - T[n - 3] + 2(n - 1) - 1 \\ &= 2T[n - 2] - T[n - 3] + 2n - 3\end{aligned}$$

Difference:

$$\begin{aligned}T[n] - T[n - 1] &= 2T[n - 1] - T[n - 2] + 2n - 1 \\ &\quad - 2T[n - 2] + T[n - 3] - 2n + 3\end{aligned}$$

$$T[n] = 3T[n - 1] - 3T[n - 2] + T[n - 3] + 2$$

$$T[n] = 2T[n - 1] - T[n - 2] + 2n - 1$$

Shift:

$$\begin{aligned}T[n - 1] &= 2T[n - 2] - T[n - 3] + 2(n - 1) - 1 \\ &= 2T[n - 2] - T[n - 3] + 2n - 3\end{aligned}$$

Difference:

$$\begin{aligned}T[n] - T[n - 1] &= 2T[n - 1] - T[n - 2] + 2n - 1 \\ &\quad - 2T[n - 2] + T[n - 3] - 2n + 3\end{aligned}$$

$$T[n] = 3T[n - 1] - 3T[n - 2] + T[n - 3] + 2$$

and so on...

## 6.4 Generating Functions

### Definition 7 (Generating Function)

Let  $(a_n)_{n \geq 0}$  be a sequence. The corresponding

- ▶ **generating function (Erzeugendenfunktion)** is

$$F(z) := \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n z^n;$$

- ▶ **exponential generating function (exponentielle Erzeugendenfunktion)** is

$$F(z) = \sum_{n \geq 0} \frac{a_n}{n!} z^n.$$

## 6.4 Generating Functions

### Definition 7 (Generating Function)

Let  $(a_n)_{n \geq 0}$  be a sequence. The corresponding

- ▶ **generating function** (Erzeugendenfunktion) is

$$F(z) := \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n z^n;$$

- ▶ **exponential generating function** (exponentielle Erzeugendenfunktion) is

$$F(z) = \sum_{n \geq 0} \frac{a_n}{n!} z^n.$$

## 6.4 Generating Functions

### Example 8

1. The generating function of the sequence  $(1, 0, 0, \dots)$  is

$$F(z) = 1.$$

2. The generating function of the sequence  $(1, 1, 1, \dots)$  is

$$F(z) = \frac{1}{1-z}.$$

## 6.4 Generating Functions

### Example 8

1. The generating function of the sequence  $(1, 0, 0, \dots)$  is

$$F(z) = 1.$$

2. The generating function of the sequence  $(1, 1, 1, \dots)$  is

$$F(z) = \frac{1}{1-z}.$$

## 6.4 Generating Functions

There are two different views:

A generating function is a **formal power series** (formale Potenzreihe).

Then the generating function is an **algebraic object**.

Let  $f = \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n z^n$  and  $g = \sum_{n \geq 0} b_n z^n$ .

- ▶ **Equality:**  $f$  and  $g$  are equal if  $a_n = b_n$  for all  $n$ .
- ▶ **Addition:**  $f + g := \sum_{n \geq 0} (a_n + b_n) z^n$ .
- ▶ **Multiplication:**  $f \cdot g := \sum_{n \geq 0} c_n z^n$  with  $c = \sum_{p=0}^n a_p b_{n-p}$ .

There are no convergence issues here.



## 6.4 Generating Functions

There are two different views:

A generating function is a **formal power series** (**formale Potenzreihe**).

Then the generating function is an **algebraic object**.

Let  $f = \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n z^n$  and  $g = \sum_{n \geq 0} b_n z^n$ .

- ▶ **Equality:**  $f$  and  $g$  are equal if  $a_n = b_n$  for all  $n$ .
- ▶ **Addition:**  $f + g := \sum_{n \geq 0} (a_n + b_n) z^n$ .
- ▶ **Multiplication:**  $f \cdot g := \sum_{n \geq 0} c_n z^n$  with  $c_n = \sum_{p=0}^n a_p b_{n-p}$ .

There are no convergence issues here.

## 6.4 Generating Functions

There are two different views:

A generating function is a **formal power series** (**formale Potenzreihe**).

Then the generating function is an **algebraic object**.

Let  $f = \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n z^n$  and  $g = \sum_{n \geq 0} b_n z^n$ .

- ▶ **Equality:**  $f$  and  $g$  are equal if  $a_n = b_n$  for all  $n$ .
- ▶ **Addition:**  $f + g := \sum_{n \geq 0} (a_n + b_n) z^n$ .
- ▶ **Multiplication:**  $f \cdot g := \sum_{n \geq 0} c_n z^n$  with  $c = \sum_{p=0}^n a_p b_{n-p}$ .

There are no convergence issues here.

## 6.4 Generating Functions

There are two different views:

A generating function is a **formal power series** (**formale Potenzreihe**).

Then the generating function is an **algebraic object**.

Let  $f = \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n z^n$  and  $g = \sum_{n \geq 0} b_n z^n$ .

- ▶ **Equality:**  $f$  and  $g$  are equal if  $a_n = b_n$  for all  $n$ .
- ▶ **Addition:**  $f + g := \sum_{n \geq 0} (a_n + b_n) z^n$ .
- ▶ **Multiplication:**  $f \cdot g := \sum_{n \geq 0} c_n z^n$  with  $c = \sum_{p=0}^n a_p b_{n-p}$ .

There are no convergence issues here.

## 6.4 Generating Functions

There are two different views:

A generating function is a **formal power series** (**formale Potenzreihe**).

Then the generating function is an **algebraic object**.

Let  $f = \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n z^n$  and  $g = \sum_{n \geq 0} b_n z^n$ .

- ▶ **Equality:**  $f$  and  $g$  are equal if  $a_n = b_n$  for all  $n$ .
- ▶ **Addition:**  $f + g := \sum_{n \geq 0} (a_n + b_n) z^n$ .
- ▶ **Multiplication:**  $f \cdot g := \sum_{n \geq 0} c_n z^n$  with  $c = \sum_{p=0}^n a_p b_{n-p}$ .

There are no convergence issues here.

## 6.4 Generating Functions

There are two different views:

A generating function is a **formal power series** (**formale Potenzreihe**).

Then the generating function is an **algebraic object**.

Let  $f = \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n z^n$  and  $g = \sum_{n \geq 0} b_n z^n$ .

▶ **Equality:**  $f$  and  $g$  are equal if  $a_n = b_n$  for all  $n$ .

▶ **Addition:**  $f + g := \sum_{n \geq 0} (a_n + b_n) z^n$ .

▶ **Multiplication:**  $f \cdot g := \sum_{n \geq 0} c_n z^n$  with  $c = \sum_{p=0}^n a_p b_{n-p}$ .

There are no convergence issues here.

## 6.4 Generating Functions

There are two different views:

A generating function is a **formal power series** (**formale Potenzreihe**).

Then the generating function is an **algebraic object**.

Let  $f = \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n z^n$  and  $g = \sum_{n \geq 0} b_n z^n$ .

- ▶ **Equality:**  $f$  and  $g$  are equal if  $a_n = b_n$  for all  $n$ .
- ▶ **Addition:**  $f + g := \sum_{n \geq 0} (a_n + b_n) z^n$ .
- ▶ **Multiplication:**  $f \cdot g := \sum_{n \geq 0} c_n z^n$  with  $c = \sum_{p=0}^n a_p b_{n-p}$ .

There are no convergence issues here.

## 6.4 Generating Functions

There are two different views:

A generating function is a **formal power series** (**formale Potenzreihe**).

Then the generating function is an **algebraic object**.

Let  $f = \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n z^n$  and  $g = \sum_{n \geq 0} b_n z^n$ .

- ▶ **Equality:**  $f$  and  $g$  are equal if  $a_n = b_n$  for all  $n$ .
- ▶ **Addition:**  $f + g := \sum_{n \geq 0} (a_n + b_n) z^n$ .
- ▶ **Multiplication:**  $f \cdot g := \sum_{n \geq 0} c_n z^n$  with  $c = \sum_{p=0}^n a_p b_{n-p}$ .

There are no convergence issues here.

## 6.4 Generating Functions

The arithmetic view:

We view a power series as a function  $f : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ .

Then, it is important to think about convergence/convergence radius etc.



## 6.4 Generating Functions

The arithmetic view:

We view a power series as a function  $f : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ .

Then, it is important to think about convergence/convergence radius etc.

## 6.4 Generating Functions

The arithmetic view:

We view a power series as a function  $f : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ .

Then, it is important to think about convergence/convergence radius etc.

## 6.4 Generating Functions

What does  $\sum_{n \geq 0} z^n = \frac{1}{1-z}$  mean in the **algebraic view**?

It means that the power series  $1 - z$  and the power series  $\sum_{n \geq 0} z^n$  are invers, i.e.,

$$(1 - z) \cdot \left( \sum_{n \geq 0} z^n \right) = 1 .$$

This is well-defined.

## 6.4 Generating Functions

What does  $\sum_{n \geq 0} z^n = \frac{1}{1-z}$  mean in the **algebraic view**?

It means that the power series  $1 - z$  and the power series  $\sum_{n \geq 0} z^n$  are invers, i.e.,

$$(1 - z) \cdot \left( \sum_{n \geq 0} z^n \right) = 1 .$$

This is well-defined.

## 6.4 Generating Functions

What does  $\sum_{n \geq 0} z^n = \frac{1}{1-z}$  mean in the **algebraic view**?

It means that the power series  $1 - z$  and the power series  $\sum_{n \geq 0} z^n$  are invers, i.e.,

$$(1 - z) \cdot \left( \sum_{n \geq 0} z^n \right) = 1 .$$

This is well-defined.

## 6.4 Generating Functions

Suppose we are given the generating function

$$\sum_{n \geq 0} z^n = \frac{1}{1 - z} .$$

## 6.4 Generating Functions

Suppose we are given the generating function

$$\sum_{n \geq 0} z^n = \frac{1}{1-z} .$$

We can compute the derivative:

$$\sum_{n \geq 1} n z^{n-1} = \frac{1}{(1-z)^2}$$

## 6.4 Generating Functions

Suppose we are given the generating function

$$\sum_{n \geq 0} z^n = \frac{1}{1-z} .$$

We can compute the derivative:

$$\underbrace{\sum_{n \geq 1} n z^{n-1}}_{\sum_{n \geq 0} (n+1) z^n} = \frac{1}{(1-z)^2}$$



## 6.4 Generating Functions

Suppose we are given the generating function

$$\sum_{n \geq 0} z^n = \frac{1}{1-z} .$$

We can compute the derivative:

$$\underbrace{\sum_{n \geq 1} n z^{n-1}}_{\sum_{n \geq 0} (n+1) z^n} = \frac{1}{(1-z)^2}$$

Hence, the generating function of the sequence  $a_n = n + 1$  is  $1/(1-z)^2$ .

## 6.4 Generating Functions

We can repeat this

## 6.4 Generating Functions

We can repeat this

$$\sum_{n \geq 0} (n + 1)z^n = \frac{1}{(1 - z)^2} .$$

## 6.4 Generating Functions

We can repeat this

$$\sum_{n \geq 0} (n + 1)z^n = \frac{1}{(1 - z)^2} .$$

Derivative:

$$\sum_{n \geq 1} n(n + 1)z^{n-1} = \frac{2}{(1 - z)^3}$$

## 6.4 Generating Functions

We can repeat this

$$\sum_{n \geq 0} (n + 1)z^n = \frac{1}{(1 - z)^2} .$$

Derivative:

$$\underbrace{\sum_{n \geq 1} n(n + 1)z^{n-1}}_{\sum_{n \geq 0} (n+1)(n+2)z^n} = \frac{2}{(1 - z)^3}$$

## 6.4 Generating Functions

We can repeat this

$$\sum_{n \geq 0} (n + 1)z^n = \frac{1}{(1 - z)^2} .$$

Derivative:

$$\underbrace{\sum_{n \geq 1} n(n + 1)z^{n-1}}_{\sum_{n \geq 0} (n+1)(n+2)z^n} = \frac{2}{(1 - z)^3}$$

Hence, the generating function of the sequence

$$a_n = (n + 1)(n + 2) \text{ is } \frac{2}{(1 - z)^3} .$$

## 6.4 Generating Functions

Computing the  $k$ -th derivative of  $\sum z^n$ .

## 6.4 Generating Functions

Computing the  $k$ -th derivative of  $\sum z^n$ .

$$\sum_{n \geq k} n(n-1) \cdot \dots \cdot (n-k+1) z^{n-k}$$



## 6.4 Generating Functions

Computing the  $k$ -th derivative of  $\sum z^n$ .

$$\sum_{n \geq k} n(n-1) \cdot \dots \cdot (n-k+1) z^{n-k} = \sum_{n \geq 0} (n+k) \cdot \dots \cdot (n+1) z^n$$

## 6.4 Generating Functions

Computing the  $k$ -th derivative of  $\sum z^n$ .

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{n \geq k} n(n-1) \cdot \dots \cdot (n-k+1)z^{n-k} &= \sum_{n \geq 0} (n+k) \cdot \dots \cdot (n+1)z^n \\ &= \frac{k!}{(1-z)^{k+1}} \cdot\end{aligned}$$

## 6.4 Generating Functions

Computing the  $k$ -th derivative of  $\sum z^n$ .

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{n \geq k} n(n-1) \cdot \dots \cdot (n-k+1)z^{n-k} &= \sum_{n \geq 0} (n+k) \cdot \dots \cdot (n+1)z^n \\ &= \frac{k!}{(1-z)^{k+1}} \cdot\end{aligned}$$

Hence:

$$\sum_{n \geq 0} \binom{n+k}{k} z^n = \frac{1}{(1-z)^{k+1}} \cdot$$

## 6.4 Generating Functions

Computing the  $k$ -th derivative of  $\sum z^n$ .

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{n \geq k} n(n-1) \cdot \dots \cdot (n-k+1)z^{n-k} &= \sum_{n \geq 0} (n+k) \cdot \dots \cdot (n+1)z^n \\ &= \frac{k!}{(1-z)^{k+1}}.\end{aligned}$$

Hence:

$$\sum_{n \geq 0} \binom{n+k}{k} z^n = \frac{1}{(1-z)^{k+1}}.$$

The generating function of the sequence  $a_n = \binom{n+k}{k}$  is  $\frac{1}{(1-z)^{k+1}}$ .

## 6.4 Generating Functions

$$\sum_{n \geq 0} n z^n = \sum_{n \geq 0} (n + 1) z^n - \sum_{n \geq 0} z^n$$

## 6.4 Generating Functions

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{n \geq 0} n z^n &= \sum_{n \geq 0} (n+1) z^n - \sum_{n \geq 0} z^n \\ &= \frac{1}{(1-z)^2} - \frac{1}{1-z}\end{aligned}$$

## 6.4 Generating Functions

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{n \geq 0} n z^n &= \sum_{n \geq 0} (n+1) z^n - \sum_{n \geq 0} z^n \\ &= \frac{1}{(1-z)^2} - \frac{1}{1-z} \\ &= \frac{z}{(1-z)^2}\end{aligned}$$

## 6.4 Generating Functions

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{n \geq 0} n z^n &= \sum_{n \geq 0} (n+1) z^n - \sum_{n \geq 0} z^n \\ &= \frac{1}{(1-z)^2} - \frac{1}{1-z} \\ &= \frac{z}{(1-z)^2}\end{aligned}$$



## 6.4 Generating Functions

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{n \geq 0} n z^n &= \sum_{n \geq 0} (n+1) z^n - \sum_{n \geq 0} z^n \\ &= \frac{1}{(1-z)^2} - \frac{1}{1-z} \\ &= \frac{z}{(1-z)^2}\end{aligned}$$

The generating function of the sequence  $a_n = n$  is  $\frac{z}{(1-z)^2}$ .

## 6.4 Generating Functions

We know

$$\sum_{n \geq 0} y^n = \frac{1}{1-y}$$

Hence,

$$\sum_{n \geq 0} a^n z^n = \frac{1}{1-az}$$

The generating function of the sequence  $f_n = a^n$  is  $\frac{1}{1-az}$ .

## 6.4 Generating Functions

We know

$$\sum_{n \geq 0} y^n = \frac{1}{1-y}$$

Hence,

$$\sum_{n \geq 0} a^n z^n = \frac{1}{1-az}$$

The generating function of the sequence  $f_n = a^n$  is  $\frac{1}{1-az}$ .

## 6.4 Generating Functions

We know

$$\sum_{n \geq 0} y^n = \frac{1}{1-y}$$

Hence,

$$\sum_{n \geq 0} a^n z^n = \frac{1}{1-az}$$

The generating function of the sequence  $f_n = a^n$  is  $\frac{1}{1-az}$ .

## Example: $a_n = a_{n-1} + 1, a_0 = 1$

Suppose we have the recurrence  $a_n = a_{n-1} + 1$  for  $n \geq 1$  and  $a_0 = 1$ .

$$A(z)$$

## Example: $a_n = a_{n-1} + 1$ , $a_0 = 1$

Suppose we have the recurrence  $a_n = a_{n-1} + 1$  for  $n \geq 1$  and  $a_0 = 1$ .

$$A(z) = \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n z^n$$

## Example: $a_n = a_{n-1} + 1, a_0 = 1$

Suppose we have the recurrence  $a_n = a_{n-1} + 1$  for  $n \geq 1$  and  $a_0 = 1$ .

$$\begin{aligned} A(z) &= \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n z^n \\ &= a_0 + \sum_{n \geq 1} (a_{n-1} + 1) z^n \end{aligned}$$

## Example: $a_n = a_{n-1} + 1$ , $a_0 = 1$

Suppose we have the recurrence  $a_n = a_{n-1} + 1$  for  $n \geq 1$  and  $a_0 = 1$ .

$$\begin{aligned}A(z) &= \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n z^n \\&= a_0 + \sum_{n \geq 1} (a_{n-1} + 1) z^n \\&= 1 + z \sum_{n \geq 1} a_{n-1} z^{n-1} + \sum_{n \geq 1} z^n\end{aligned}$$



## Example: $a_n = a_{n-1} + 1$ , $a_0 = 1$

Suppose we have the recurrence  $a_n = a_{n-1} + 1$  for  $n \geq 1$  and  $a_0 = 1$ .

$$\begin{aligned}A(z) &= \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n z^n \\&= a_0 + \sum_{n \geq 1} (a_{n-1} + 1) z^n \\&= 1 + z \sum_{n \geq 1} a_{n-1} z^{n-1} + \sum_{n \geq 1} z^n \\&= z \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n z^n + \sum_{n \geq 0} z^n\end{aligned}$$

## Example: $a_n = a_{n-1} + 1$ , $a_0 = 1$

Suppose we have the recurrence  $a_n = a_{n-1} + 1$  for  $n \geq 1$  and  $a_0 = 1$ .

$$\begin{aligned}A(z) &= \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n z^n \\&= a_0 + \sum_{n \geq 1} (a_{n-1} + 1) z^n \\&= 1 + z \sum_{n \geq 1} a_{n-1} z^{n-1} + \sum_{n \geq 1} z^n \\&= z \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n z^n + \sum_{n \geq 0} z^n \\&= zA(z) + \sum_{n \geq 0} z^n\end{aligned}$$

## Example: $a_n = a_{n-1} + 1, a_0 = 1$

Suppose we have the recurrence  $a_n = a_{n-1} + 1$  for  $n \geq 1$  and  $a_0 = 1$ .

$$\begin{aligned}A(z) &= \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n z^n \\&= a_0 + \sum_{n \geq 1} (a_{n-1} + 1) z^n \\&= 1 + z \sum_{n \geq 1} a_{n-1} z^{n-1} + \sum_{n \geq 1} z^n \\&= z \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n z^n + \sum_{n \geq 0} z^n \\&= zA(z) + \sum_{n \geq 0} z^n \\&= zA(z) + \frac{1}{1-z}\end{aligned}$$

**Example:**  $a_n = a_{n-1} + 1$ ,  $a_0 = 1$

Solving for  $A(z)$  gives

**Example:**  $a_n = a_{n-1} + 1, a_0 = 1$

Solving for  $A(z)$  gives

$$A(z) = \frac{1}{(1-z)^2}$$

**Example:**  $a_n = a_{n-1} + 1, a_0 = 1$

Solving for  $A(z)$  gives

$$\sum_{n \geq 0} a_n z^n = A(z) = \frac{1}{(1-z)^2}$$

**Example:**  $a_n = a_{n-1} + 1, a_0 = 1$

Solving for  $A(z)$  gives

$$\sum_{n \geq 0} a_n z^n = A(z) = \frac{1}{(1-z)^2} = \sum_{n \geq 0} (n+1)z^n$$

**Example:**  $a_n = a_{n-1} + 1, a_0 = 1$

Solving for  $A(z)$  gives

$$\sum_{n \geq 0} a_n z^n = A(z) = \frac{1}{(1-z)^2} = \sum_{n \geq 0} (n+1)z^n$$

Hence,  $a_n = n + 1$ .



# Some Generating Functions

<i>n</i> -th sequence element	generating function

# Some Generating Functions

<i>n</i> -th sequence element	generating function
1	$\frac{1}{1-z}$

# Some Generating Functions

<i>n</i> -th sequence element	generating function
1	$\frac{1}{1-z}$
$n+1$	$\frac{1}{(1-z)^2}$

# Some Generating Functions

<i>n</i> -th sequence element	generating function
1	$\frac{1}{1-z}$
$n+1$	$\frac{1}{(1-z)^2}$
$\binom{n+k}{k}$	$\frac{1}{(1-z)^{k+1}}$

# Some Generating Functions

<i>n</i> -th sequence element	generating function
1	$\frac{1}{1-z}$
$n + 1$	$\frac{1}{(1-z)^2}$
$\binom{n+k}{k}$	$\frac{1}{(1-z)^{k+1}}$
$n$	$\frac{z}{(1-z)^2}$

# Some Generating Functions

<i>n</i> -th sequence element	generating function
1	$\frac{1}{1-z}$
$n+1$	$\frac{1}{(1-z)^2}$
$\binom{n+k}{k}$	$\frac{1}{(1-z)^{k+1}}$
$n$	$\frac{z}{(1-z)^2}$
$a^n$	$\frac{1}{1-az}$

# Some Generating Functions

<i>n</i> -th sequence element	generating function
1	$\frac{1}{1-z}$
$n+1$	$\frac{1}{(1-z)^2}$
$\binom{n+k}{k}$	$\frac{1}{(1-z)^{k+1}}$
$n$	$\frac{z}{(1-z)^2}$
$a^n$	$\frac{1}{1-az}$
$n^2$	$\frac{z(1+z)}{(1-z)^3}$

# Some Generating Functions

<i>n</i> -th sequence element	generating function
1	$\frac{1}{1-z}$
$n+1$	$\frac{1}{(1-z)^2}$
$\binom{n+k}{k}$	$\frac{1}{(1-z)^{k+1}}$
$n$	$\frac{z}{(1-z)^2}$
$a^n$	$\frac{1}{1-az}$
$n^2$	$\frac{z(1+z)}{(1-z)^3}$
$\frac{1}{n!}$	$e^z$



# Some Generating Functions

<i>n</i> -th sequence element	generating function

# Some Generating Functions

<i>n</i> -th sequence element	generating function
$cf_n$	$cF$

# Some Generating Functions

<i>n</i> -th sequence element	generating function
$cf_n$	$cF$
$f_n + g_n$	$F + G$

# Some Generating Functions

<i>n</i> -th sequence element	generating function
$cf_n$	$cF$
$f_n + g_n$	$F + G$
$\sum_{i=0}^n f_i g_{n-i}$	$F \cdot G$

# Some Generating Functions

<i>n</i> -th sequence element	generating function
$cf_n$	$cF$
$f_n + g_n$	$F + G$
$\sum_{i=0}^n f_i g_{n-i}$	$F \cdot G$
$f_{n-k} \ (n \geq k); \ 0 \text{ otw.}$	$z^k F$

# Some Generating Functions

<i>n</i> -th sequence element	generating function
$cf_n$	$cF$
$f_n + g_n$	$F + G$
$\sum_{i=0}^n f_i g_{n-i}$	$F \cdot G$
$f_{n-k} \ (n \geq k); \ 0 \text{ otw.}$	$z^k F$
$\sum_{i=0}^n f_i$	$\frac{F(z)}{1-z}$

# Some Generating Functions

<i>n</i> -th sequence element	generating function
$cf_n$	$cF$
$f_n + g_n$	$F + G$
$\sum_{i=0}^n f_i g_{n-i}$	$F \cdot G$
$f_{n-k} \ (n \geq k); \ 0 \text{ otw.}$	$z^k F$
$\sum_{i=0}^n f_i$	$\frac{F(z)}{1-z}$
$nf_n$	$z \frac{dF(z)}{dz}$

# Some Generating Functions

<i>n</i> -th sequence element	generating function
$cf_n$	$cF$
$f_n + g_n$	$F + G$
$\sum_{i=0}^n f_i g_{n-i}$	$F \cdot G$
$f_{n-k} \ (n \geq k); \ 0 \text{ otw.}$	$z^k F$
$\sum_{i=0}^n f_i$	$\frac{F(z)}{1-z}$
$nf_n$	$z \frac{dF(z)}{dz}$
$c^n f_n$	$F(cz)$



# Solving Recursions with Generating Functions

1. Set  $A(z) = \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n z^n$ .

# Solving Recursions with Generating Functions

1. Set  $A(z) = \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n z^n$ .
2. Transform the right hand side so that boundary condition and recurrence relation can be plugged in.

# Solving Recursions with Generating Functions

1. Set  $A(z) = \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n z^n$ .
2. Transform the right hand side so that boundary condition and recurrence relation can be plugged in.
3. Do further transformations so that the infinite sums on the right hand side can be replaced by  $A(z)$ .

# Solving Recursions with Generating Functions

1. Set  $A(z) = \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n z^n$ .
2. Transform the right hand side so that boundary condition and recurrence relation can be plugged in.
3. Do further transformations so that the infinite sums on the right hand side can be replaced by  $A(z)$ .
4. Solving for  $A(z)$  gives an equation of the form  $A(z) = f(z)$ , where hopefully  $f(z)$  is a simple function.

# Solving Recursions with Generating Functions

1. Set  $A(z) = \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n z^n$ .
2. Transform the right hand side so that boundary condition and recurrence relation can be plugged in.
3. Do further transformations so that the infinite sums on the right hand side can be replaced by  $A(z)$ .
4. Solving for  $A(z)$  gives an equation of the form  $A(z) = f(z)$ , where hopefully  $f(z)$  is a simple function.
5. Write  $f(z)$  as a formal power series.  
Techniques:

# Solving Recursions with Generating Functions

1. Set  $A(z) = \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n z^n$ .
2. Transform the right hand side so that boundary condition and recurrence relation can be plugged in.
3. Do further transformations so that the infinite sums on the right hand side can be replaced by  $A(z)$ .
4. Solving for  $A(z)$  gives an equation of the form  $A(z) = f(z)$ , where hopefully  $f(z)$  is a simple function.
5. Write  $f(z)$  as a formal power series.  
Techniques:
  - ▶ partial fraction decomposition (**Partialbruchzerlegung**)

# Solving Recursions with Generating Functions

1. Set  $A(z) = \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n z^n$ .
2. Transform the right hand side so that boundary condition and recurrence relation can be plugged in.
3. Do further transformations so that the infinite sums on the right hand side can be replaced by  $A(z)$ .
4. Solving for  $A(z)$  gives an equation of the form  $A(z) = f(z)$ , where hopefully  $f(z)$  is a simple function.
5. Write  $f(z)$  as a formal power series.  
Techniques:
  - ▶ partial fraction decomposition (**Partialbruchzerlegung**)
  - ▶ lookup in tables

# Solving Recursions with Generating Functions

1. Set  $A(z) = \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n z^n$ .
2. Transform the right hand side so that boundary condition and recurrence relation can be plugged in.
3. Do further transformations so that the infinite sums on the right hand side can be replaced by  $A(z)$ .
4. Solving for  $A(z)$  gives an equation of the form  $A(z) = f(z)$ , where hopefully  $f(z)$  is a simple function.
5. Write  $f(z)$  as a formal power series.  
Techniques:
  - ▶ partial fraction decomposition (**Partialbruchzerlegung**)
  - ▶ lookup in tables
6. The coefficients of the resulting power series are the  $a_n$ .



**Example:**  $a_n = 2a_{n-1}$ ,  $a_0 = 1$

1. Set up generating function:

**Example:**  $a_n = 2a_{n-1}$ ,  $a_0 = 1$

1. Set up generating function:

$$A(z) = \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n z^n$$

## Example: $a_n = 2a_{n-1}, a_0 = 1$

1. Set up generating function:

$$A(z) = \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n z^n$$

2. Transform right hand side so that recurrence can be plugged in:

## Example: $a_n = 2a_{n-1}, a_0 = 1$

1. Set up generating function:

$$A(z) = \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n z^n$$

2. Transform right hand side so that recurrence can be plugged in:

$$A(z) = a_0 + \sum_{n \geq 1} a_n z^n$$

## Example: $a_n = 2a_{n-1}$ , $a_0 = 1$

1. Set up generating function:

$$A(z) = \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n z^n$$

2. Transform right hand side so that recurrence can be plugged in:

$$A(z) = a_0 + \sum_{n \geq 1} a_n z^n$$

2. Plug in:

## Example: $a_n = 2a_{n-1}$ , $a_0 = 1$

1. Set up generating function:

$$A(z) = \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n z^n$$

2. Transform right hand side so that recurrence can be plugged in:

$$A(z) = a_0 + \sum_{n \geq 1} a_n z^n$$

2. Plug in:

$$A(z) = 1 + \sum_{n \geq 1} (2a_{n-1})z^n$$

**Example:**  $a_n = 2a_{n-1}$ ,  $a_0 = 1$

**Example:**  $a_n = 2a_{n-1}, a_0 = 1$

3. Transform right hand side so that infinite sums can be replaced by  $A(z)$  or by simple function.



## Example: $a_n = 2a_{n-1}, a_0 = 1$

3. Transform right hand side so that infinite sums can be replaced by  $A(z)$  or by simple function.

$$A(z) = 1 + \sum_{n \geq 1} (2a_{n-1})z^n$$

## Example: $a_n = 2a_{n-1}, a_0 = 1$

3. Transform right hand side so that infinite sums can be replaced by  $A(z)$  or by simple function.

$$\begin{aligned} A(z) &= 1 + \sum_{n \geq 1} (2a_{n-1})z^n \\ &= 1 + 2z \sum_{n \geq 1} a_{n-1}z^{n-1} \end{aligned}$$

## Example: $a_n = 2a_{n-1}, a_0 = 1$

3. Transform right hand side so that infinite sums can be replaced by  $A(z)$  or by simple function.

$$\begin{aligned} A(z) &= 1 + \sum_{n \geq 1} (2a_{n-1})z^n \\ &= 1 + 2z \sum_{n \geq 1} a_{n-1}z^{n-1} \\ &= 1 + 2z \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n z^n \end{aligned}$$

## Example: $a_n = 2a_{n-1}, a_0 = 1$

3. Transform right hand side so that infinite sums can be replaced by  $A(z)$  or by simple function.

$$\begin{aligned}A(z) &= 1 + \sum_{n \geq 1} (2a_{n-1})z^n \\&= 1 + 2z \sum_{n \geq 1} a_{n-1}z^{n-1} \\&= 1 + 2z \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n z^n \\&= 1 + 2z \cdot A(z)\end{aligned}$$

## Example: $a_n = 2a_{n-1}, a_0 = 1$

3. Transform right hand side so that infinite sums can be replaced by  $A(z)$  or by simple function.

$$\begin{aligned}A(z) &= 1 + \sum_{n \geq 1} (2a_{n-1})z^n \\&= 1 + 2z \sum_{n \geq 1} a_{n-1}z^{n-1} \\&= 1 + 2z \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n z^n \\&= 1 + 2z \cdot A(z)\end{aligned}$$

4. Solve for  $A(z)$ .

## Example: $a_n = 2a_{n-1}, a_0 = 1$

3. Transform right hand side so that infinite sums can be replaced by  $A(z)$  or by simple function.

$$\begin{aligned}A(z) &= 1 + \sum_{n \geq 1} (2a_{n-1})z^n \\&= 1 + 2z \sum_{n \geq 1} a_{n-1}z^{n-1} \\&= 1 + 2z \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n z^n \\&= 1 + 2z \cdot A(z)\end{aligned}$$

4. Solve for  $A(z)$ .

$$A(z) = \frac{1}{1 - 2z}$$

**Example:**  $a_n = 2a_{n-1}$ ,  $a_0 = 1$

5. Rewrite  $f(z)$  as a power series:

$$A(z) = \frac{1}{1 - 2z}$$

**Example:**  $a_n = 2a_{n-1}$ ,  $a_0 = 1$

5. Rewrite  $f(z)$  as a power series:

$$\sum_{n \geq 0} a_n z^n = A(z) = \frac{1}{1 - 2z}$$



**Example:**  $a_n = 2a_{n-1}$ ,  $a_0 = 1$

5. Rewrite  $f(z)$  as a power series:

$$\sum_{n \geq 0} a_n z^n = A(z) = \frac{1}{1 - 2z} = \sum_{n \geq 0} 2^n z^n$$

**Example:**  $a_n = 3a_{n-1} + n$ ,  $a_0 = 1$

1. Set up generating function:

$$A(z) = \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n z^n$$

**Example:**  $a_n = 3a_{n-1} + n$ ,  $a_0 = 1$

1. Set up generating function:

$$A(z) = \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n z^n$$

**Example:**  $a_n = 3a_{n-1} + n, a_0 = 1$

2./3. Transform right hand side:

**Example:**  $a_n = 3a_{n-1} + n$ ,  $a_0 = 1$

2./3. Transform right hand side:

$$A(z) = \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n z^n$$

**Example:**  $a_n = 3a_{n-1} + n$ ,  $a_0 = 1$

2./3. Transform right hand side:

$$\begin{aligned} A(z) &= \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n z^n \\ &= a_0 + \sum_{n \geq 1} a_n z^n \end{aligned}$$

**Example:**  $a_n = 3a_{n-1} + n, a_0 = 1$

2./3. Transform right hand side:

$$\begin{aligned} A(z) &= \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n z^n \\ &= a_0 + \sum_{n \geq 1} a_n z^n \\ &= 1 + \sum_{n \geq 1} (3a_{n-1} + n) z^n \end{aligned}$$

## Example: $a_n = 3a_{n-1} + n$ , $a_0 = 1$

2./3. Transform right hand side:

$$\begin{aligned}A(z) &= \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n z^n \\&= a_0 + \sum_{n \geq 1} a_n z^n \\&= 1 + \sum_{n \geq 1} (3a_{n-1} + n) z^n \\&= 1 + 3z \sum_{n \geq 1} a_{n-1} z^{n-1} + \sum_{n \geq 1} n z^n\end{aligned}$$



## Example: $a_n = 3a_{n-1} + n$ , $a_0 = 1$

2./3. Transform right hand side:

$$\begin{aligned}A(z) &= \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n z^n \\&= a_0 + \sum_{n \geq 1} a_n z^n \\&= 1 + \sum_{n \geq 1} (3a_{n-1} + n) z^n \\&= 1 + 3z \sum_{n \geq 1} a_{n-1} z^{n-1} + \sum_{n \geq 1} n z^n \\&= 1 + 3z \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n z^n + \sum_{n \geq 0} n z^n\end{aligned}$$

## Example: $a_n = 3a_{n-1} + n$ , $a_0 = 1$

2./3. Transform right hand side:

$$\begin{aligned}A(z) &= \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n z^n \\&= a_0 + \sum_{n \geq 1} a_n z^n \\&= 1 + \sum_{n \geq 1} (3a_{n-1} + n) z^n \\&= 1 + 3z \sum_{n \geq 1} a_{n-1} z^{n-1} + \sum_{n \geq 1} n z^n \\&= 1 + 3z \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n z^n + \sum_{n \geq 0} n z^n \\&= 1 + 3zA(z) + \frac{z}{(1-z)^2}\end{aligned}$$

**Example:**  $a_n = 3a_{n-1} + n, a_0 = 1$

4. Solve for  $A(z)$ :

**Example:**  $a_n = 3a_{n-1} + n, a_0 = 1$

4. Solve for  $A(z)$ :

$$A(z) = 1 + 3zA(z) + \frac{z}{(1-z)^2}$$

**Example:**  $a_n = 3a_{n-1} + n$ ,  $a_0 = 1$

4. Solve for  $A(z)$ :

$$A(z) = 1 + 3zA(z) + \frac{z}{(1-z)^2}$$

gives

$$A(z) = \frac{(1-z)^2 + z}{(1-3z)(1-z)^2}$$

**Example:**  $a_n = 3a_{n-1} + n, a_0 = 1$

4. Solve for  $A(z)$ :

$$A(z) = 1 + 3zA(z) + \frac{z}{(1-z)^2}$$

gives

$$A(z) = \frac{(1-z)^2 + z}{(1-3z)(1-z)^2} = \frac{z^2 - z + 1}{(1-3z)(1-z)^2}$$

**Example:**  $a_n = 3a_{n-1} + n, a_0 = 1$

5. Write  $f(z)$  as a formal power series:

We use partial fraction decomposition:

**Example:**  $a_n = 3a_{n-1} + n, a_0 = 1$

5. Write  $f(z)$  as a formal power series:

We use partial fraction decomposition:

$$\frac{z^2 - z + 1}{(1 - 3z)(1 - z)^2}$$



**Example:**  $a_n = 3a_{n-1} + n$ ,  $a_0 = 1$

5. Write  $f(z)$  as a formal power series:

We use partial fraction decomposition:

$$\frac{z^2 - z + 1}{(1 - 3z)(1 - z)^2} \stackrel{!}{=} \frac{A}{1 - 3z} + \frac{B}{1 - z} + \frac{C}{(1 - z)^2}$$

**Example:**  $a_n = 3a_{n-1} + n$ ,  $a_0 = 1$

5. Write  $f(z)$  as a formal power series:

We use partial fraction decomposition:

$$\frac{z^2 - z + 1}{(1 - 3z)(1 - z)^2} \stackrel{!}{=} \frac{A}{1 - 3z} + \frac{B}{1 - z} + \frac{C}{(1 - z)^2}$$

This gives

$$z^2 - z + 1 = A(1 - z)^2 + B(1 - 3z)(1 - z) + C(1 - 3z)$$

## Example: $a_n = 3a_{n-1} + n, a_0 = 1$

5. Write  $f(z)$  as a formal power series:

We use partial fraction decomposition:

$$\frac{z^2 - z + 1}{(1 - 3z)(1 - z)^2} \stackrel{!}{=} \frac{A}{1 - 3z} + \frac{B}{1 - z} + \frac{C}{(1 - z)^2}$$

This gives

$$\begin{aligned} z^2 - z + 1 &= A(1 - z)^2 + B(1 - 3z)(1 - z) + C(1 - 3z) \\ &= A(1 - 2z + z^2) + B(1 - 4z + 3z^2) + C(1 - 3z) \end{aligned}$$

## Example: $a_n = 3a_{n-1} + n, a_0 = 1$

5. Write  $f(z)$  as a formal power series:

We use partial fraction decomposition:

$$\frac{z^2 - z + 1}{(1 - 3z)(1 - z)^2} \stackrel{!}{=} \frac{A}{1 - 3z} + \frac{B}{1 - z} + \frac{C}{(1 - z)^2}$$

This gives

$$\begin{aligned} z^2 - z + 1 &= A(1 - z)^2 + B(1 - 3z)(1 - z) + C(1 - 3z) \\ &= A(1 - 2z + z^2) + B(1 - 4z + 3z^2) + C(1 - 3z) \\ &= (A + 3B)z^2 + (-2A - 4B - 3C)z + (A + B + C) \end{aligned}$$

**Example:**  $a_n = 3a_{n-1} + n, a_0 = 1$

5. Write  $f(z)$  as a formal power series:

This leads to the following conditions:

$$A + B + C = 1$$

$$2A + 4B + 3C = 1$$

$$A + 3B = 1$$

**Example:**  $a_n = 3a_{n-1} + n, a_0 = 1$

5. Write  $f(z)$  as a formal power series:

This leads to the following conditions:

$$A + B + C = 1$$

$$2A + 4B + 3C = 1$$

$$A + 3B = 1$$

which gives

$$A = \frac{7}{4} \quad B = -\frac{1}{4} \quad C = -\frac{1}{2}$$

**Example:**  $a_n = 3a_{n-1} + n$ ,  $a_0 = 1$

5. Write  $f(z)$  as a formal power series:

**Example:**  $a_n = 3a_{n-1} + n, a_0 = 1$

5. Write  $f(z)$  as a formal power series:

$$A(z) = \frac{7}{4} \cdot \frac{1}{1-3z} - \frac{1}{4} \cdot \frac{1}{1-z} - \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{(1-z)^2}$$



**Example:**  $a_n = 3a_{n-1} + n, a_0 = 1$

5. Write  $f(z)$  as a formal power series:

$$\begin{aligned} A(z) &= \frac{7}{4} \cdot \frac{1}{1-3z} - \frac{1}{4} \cdot \frac{1}{1-z} - \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{(1-z)^2} \\ &= \frac{7}{4} \cdot \sum_{n \geq 0} 3^n z^n - \frac{1}{4} \cdot \sum_{n \geq 0} z^n - \frac{1}{2} \cdot \sum_{n \geq 0} (n+1)z^n \end{aligned}$$

## Example: $a_n = 3a_{n-1} + n, a_0 = 1$

5. Write  $f(z)$  as a formal power series:

$$\begin{aligned}A(z) &= \frac{7}{4} \cdot \frac{1}{1-3z} - \frac{1}{4} \cdot \frac{1}{1-z} - \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{(1-z)^2} \\&= \frac{7}{4} \cdot \sum_{n \geq 0} 3^n z^n - \frac{1}{4} \cdot \sum_{n \geq 0} z^n - \frac{1}{2} \cdot \sum_{n \geq 0} (n+1) z^n \\&= \sum_{n \geq 0} \left( \frac{7}{4} \cdot 3^n - \frac{1}{4} - \frac{1}{2}(n+1) \right) z^n\end{aligned}$$

**Example:**  $a_n = 3a_{n-1} + n$ ,  $a_0 = 1$

5. Write  $f(z)$  as a formal power series:

$$\begin{aligned}A(z) &= \frac{7}{4} \cdot \frac{1}{1-3z} - \frac{1}{4} \cdot \frac{1}{1-z} - \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{(1-z)^2} \\&= \frac{7}{4} \cdot \sum_{n \geq 0} 3^n z^n - \frac{1}{4} \cdot \sum_{n \geq 0} z^n - \frac{1}{2} \cdot \sum_{n \geq 0} (n+1) z^n \\&= \sum_{n \geq 0} \left( \frac{7}{4} \cdot 3^n - \frac{1}{4} - \frac{1}{2}(n+1) \right) z^n \\&= \sum_{n \geq 0} \left( \frac{7}{4} \cdot 3^n - \frac{1}{2}n - \frac{3}{4} \right) z^n\end{aligned}$$

**Example:**  $a_n = 3a_{n-1} + n, a_0 = 1$

5. Write  $f(z)$  as a formal power series:

$$\begin{aligned}A(z) &= \frac{7}{4} \cdot \frac{1}{1-3z} - \frac{1}{4} \cdot \frac{1}{1-z} - \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{(1-z)^2} \\&= \frac{7}{4} \cdot \sum_{n \geq 0} 3^n z^n - \frac{1}{4} \cdot \sum_{n \geq 0} z^n - \frac{1}{2} \cdot \sum_{n \geq 0} (n+1) z^n \\&= \sum_{n \geq 0} \left( \frac{7}{4} \cdot 3^n - \frac{1}{4} - \frac{1}{2}(n+1) \right) z^n \\&= \sum_{n \geq 0} \left( \frac{7}{4} \cdot 3^n - \frac{1}{2}n - \frac{3}{4} \right) z^n\end{aligned}$$

6. This means  $a_n = \frac{7}{4}3^n - \frac{1}{2}n - \frac{3}{4}$ .

## 6.5 Transformation of the Recurrence

### Example 9

$$f_0 = 1$$

$$f_1 = 2$$

$$f_n = f_{n-1} \cdot f_{n-2} \text{ for } n \geq 2 .$$

## 6.5 Transformation of the Recurrence

### Example 9

$$f_0 = 1$$

$$f_1 = 2$$

$$f_n = f_{n-1} \cdot f_{n-2} \text{ for } n \geq 2 .$$

Define

$$g_n := \log f_n .$$

## 6.5 Transformation of the Recurrence

### Example 9

$$f_0 = 1$$

$$f_1 = 2$$

$$f_n = f_{n-1} \cdot f_{n-2} \text{ for } n \geq 2 .$$

Define

$$g_n := \log f_n .$$

Then

$$g_n = g_{n-1} + g_{n-2} \text{ for } n \geq 2$$

## 6.5 Transformation of the Recurrence

### Example 9

$$f_0 = 1$$

$$f_1 = 2$$

$$f_n = f_{n-1} \cdot f_{n-2} \text{ for } n \geq 2 .$$

Define

$$g_n := \log f_n .$$

Then

$$g_n = g_{n-1} + g_{n-2} \text{ for } n \geq 2$$

$$g_1 = \log 2 = 1, g_0 = 0 \text{ (für } \log = \log_2 \text{)}$$



## 6.5 Transformation of the Recurrence

### Example 9

$$f_0 = 1$$

$$f_1 = 2$$

$$f_n = f_{n-1} \cdot f_{n-2} \text{ for } n \geq 2 .$$

Define

$$g_n := \log f_n .$$

Then

$$g_n = g_{n-1} + g_{n-2} \text{ for } n \geq 2$$

$$g_1 = \log 2 = 1, \quad g_0 = 0 \text{ (für } \log = \log_2 \text{)}$$

$$g_n = F_n \text{ (} n\text{-th Fibonacci number)}$$

## 6.5 Transformation of the Recurrence

### Example 9

$$f_0 = 1$$

$$f_1 = 2$$

$$f_n = f_{n-1} \cdot f_{n-2} \text{ for } n \geq 2 .$$

Define

$$g_n := \log f_n .$$

Then

$$g_n = g_{n-1} + g_{n-2} \text{ for } n \geq 2$$

$$g_1 = \log 2 = 1, \quad g_0 = 0 \text{ (für } \log = \log_2 \text{)}$$

$$g_n = F_n \text{ (} n\text{-th Fibonacci number)}$$

$$f_n = 2^{F_n}$$

## 6.5 Transformation of the Recurrence

### Example 10

$$f_1 = 1$$

$$f_n = 3f_{\frac{n}{2}} + n; \text{ for } n = 2^k, k \geq 1 ;$$

## 6.5 Transformation of the Recurrence

### Example 10

$$f_1 = 1$$

$$f_n = 3f_{\frac{n}{2}} + n; \text{ for } n = 2^k, k \geq 1 ;$$

Define

$$g_k := f_{2^k} .$$

## 6.5 Transformation of the Recurrence

### Example 10

$$f_1 = 1$$

$$f_n = 3f_{\frac{n}{2}} + n; \text{ for } n = 2^k, k \geq 1 ;$$

Define

$$g_k := f_{2^k} .$$

Then:

$$g_0 = 1$$

## 6.5 Transformation of the Recurrence

### Example 10

$$f_1 = 1$$

$$f_n = 3f_{\frac{n}{2}} + n; \text{ for } n = 2^k, k \geq 1 ;$$

Define

$$g_k := f_{2^k} .$$

Then:

$$g_0 = 1$$

$$g_k = 3g_{k-1} + 2^k, k \geq 1$$

## 6 Recurrences

We get

$$g_k = 3 [g_{k-1}] + 2^k$$

## 6 Recurrences

We get

$$\begin{aligned}g_k &= 3[g_{k-1}] + 2^k \\ &= 3[3g_{k-2} + 2^{k-1}] + 2^k\end{aligned}$$



## 6 Recurrences

We get

$$\begin{aligned}g_k &= 3[g_{k-1}] + 2^k \\&= 3[3g_{k-2} + 2^{k-1}] + 2^k \\&= 3^2[g_{k-2}] + 3 \cdot 2^{k-1} + 2^k\end{aligned}$$

## 6 Recurrences

We get

$$\begin{aligned}g_k &= 3[g_{k-1}] + 2^k \\&= 3[3g_{k-2} + 2^{k-1}] + 2^k \\&= 3^2[g_{k-2}] + 3 \cdot 2^{k-1} + 2^k \\&= 3^2[3g_{k-3} + 2^{k-2}] + 3 \cdot 2^{k-1} + 2^k\end{aligned}$$

## 6 Recurrences

We get

$$\begin{aligned}g_k &= 3[g_{k-1}] + 2^k \\&= 3[3g_{k-2} + 2^{k-1}] + 2^k \\&= 3^2[g_{k-2}] + 3 \cdot 2^{k-1} + 2^k \\&= 3^2[3g_{k-3} + 2^{k-2}] + 3 \cdot 2^{k-1} + 2^k \\&= 3^3g_{k-3} + 3^2 \cdot 2^{k-2} + 3 \cdot 2^{k-1} + 2^k\end{aligned}$$

## 6 Recurrences

We get

$$\begin{aligned}g_k &= 3[g_{k-1}] + 2^k \\&= 3[3g_{k-2} + 2^{k-1}] + 2^k \\&= 3^2[g_{k-2}] + 3 \cdot 2^{k-1} + 2^k \\&= 3^2[3g_{k-3} + 2^{k-2}] + 3 \cdot 2^{k-1} + 2^k \\&= 3^3 g_{k-3} + 3^2 2^{k-2} + 3 \cdot 2^{k-1} + 2^k \\&= 2^k \cdot \sum_{i=0}^k \left(\frac{3}{2}\right)^i\end{aligned}$$

## 6 Recurrences

We get

$$\begin{aligned}g_k &= 3 [g_{k-1}] + 2^k \\&= 3 [3g_{k-2} + 2^{k-1}] + 2^k \\&= 3^2 [g_{k-2}] + 3 \cdot 2^{k-1} + 2^k \\&= 3^2 [3g_{k-3} + 2^{k-2}] + 3 \cdot 2^{k-1} + 2^k \\&= 3^3 g_{k-3} + 3^2 2^{k-2} + 3 \cdot 2^{k-1} + 2^k \\&= 2^k \cdot \sum_{i=0}^k \left(\frac{3}{2}\right)^i \\&= 2^k \cdot \frac{\left(\frac{3}{2}\right)^{k+1} - 1}{1/2}\end{aligned}$$

## 6 Recurrences

We get

$$\begin{aligned}g_k &= 3 [g_{k-1}] + 2^k \\&= 3 [3g_{k-2} + 2^{k-1}] + 2^k \\&= 3^2 [g_{k-2}] + 3 \cdot 2^{k-1} + 2^k \\&= 3^2 [3g_{k-3} + 2^{k-2}] + 3 \cdot 2^{k-1} + 2^k \\&= 3^3 g_{k-3} + 3^2 2^{k-2} + 3 \cdot 2^{k-1} + 2^k \\&= 2^k \cdot \sum_{i=0}^k \left(\frac{3}{2}\right)^i \\&= 2^k \cdot \frac{\left(\frac{3}{2}\right)^{k+1} - 1}{1/2} = 3^{k+1} - 2^{k+1}\end{aligned}$$

## 6 Recurrences

Let  $n = 2^k$ :

$$g_k = 3^{k+1} - 2^{k+1}, \text{ hence}$$

$$f_n = 3 \cdot 3^k - 2 \cdot 2^k$$

# 6 Recurrences

Let  $n = 2^k$ :

$$g_k = 3^{k+1} - 2^{k+1}, \text{ hence}$$

$$\begin{aligned} f_n &= 3 \cdot 3^k - 2 \cdot 2^k \\ &= 3(2^{\log_2 3})^k - 2 \cdot 2^k \end{aligned}$$



## 6 Recurrences

Let  $n = 2^k$ :

$$g_k = 3^{k+1} - 2^{k+1}, \text{ hence}$$

$$\begin{aligned} f_n &= 3 \cdot 3^k - 2 \cdot 2^k \\ &= 3(2^{\log 3})^k - 2 \cdot 2^k \\ &= 3(2^k)^{\log 3} - 2 \cdot 2^k \end{aligned}$$

## 6 Recurrences

Let  $n = 2^k$ :

$$g_k = 3^{k+1} - 2^{k+1}, \text{ hence}$$

$$\begin{aligned} f_n &= 3 \cdot 3^k - 2 \cdot 2^k \\ &= 3(2^{\log 3})^k - 2 \cdot 2^k \\ &= 3(2^k)^{\log 3} - 2 \cdot 2^k \\ &= 3n^{\log 3} - 2n . \end{aligned}$$